

ISO 20022

## Bank-to-Customer Cash Management - Maintenance 2018 - 2019

### Message Definition Report - Part 2

Approved by the Payments SEG on 21 January 2019

This document provides details of the Message Definitions for Bank-to-Customer Cash Management - Maintenance 2018 - 2019.

February 2019

# Table of Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Message Set Overview .....</b>	3
1.1	List of MessageDefinitions .....	3
<b>2</b>	<b>camt.052.001.08 BankToCustomerAccountReportV08 .....</b>	4
2.1	MessageDefinition Functionality .....	4
2.2	Structure .....	5
2.3	Constraints .....	7
2.4	Message Building Blocks .....	9
<b>3</b>	<b>camt.053.001.08 BankToCustomerStatementV08 .....</b>	38
3.1	MessageDefinition Functionality .....	38
3.2	Structure .....	39
3.3	Constraints .....	41
3.4	Message Building Blocks .....	43
<b>4</b>	<b>camt.054.001.08 BankToCustomerDebitCreditNotificationV08 .....</b>	72
4.1	MessageDefinition Functionality .....	72
4.2	Structure .....	73
4.3	Constraints .....	75
4.4	Message Building Blocks .....	76
<b>5</b>	<b>camt.060.001.05 AccountReportingRequestV05 .....</b>	103
5.1	MessageDefinition Functionality .....	103
5.2	Structure .....	104
5.3	Constraints .....	104
5.4	Message Building Blocks .....	105
<b>6</b>	<b>Message Items Types .....</b>	113
6.1	MessageComponents .....	113
6.2	Message Datatypes .....	343

# 1 Message Set Overview

## Introduction

This document describes the Bank-to-Customer Cash Management message set. It includes the new versions of the MessageDefinitions that have been impacted by the maintenance cycle 2018/2019 (MCR #137) and approved the Payments Standards Evaluation Group as ISO 20022 MessageDefinitions.

## 1.1 List of MessageDefinitions

The following table lists all MessageDefinitions described in this book.

MessageDefinition	Definition
camt.052.001.08 BankToCustomerAccountReportV08	The BankToCustomerAccountReport message is sent by the account servicer to an account owner or to a party authorised by the account owner to receive the message. It can be used to inform the account owner, or authorised party, of the entries reported to the account, and/or to provide the owner with balance information on the account at a given point in time.
camt.053.001.08 BankToCustomerStatementV08	The BankToCustomerStatement message is sent by the account servicer to an account owner or to a party authorised by the account owner to receive the message. It is used to inform the account owner, or authorised party, of the entries booked to the account, and to provide the owner with balance information on the account at a given point in time.
camt.054.001.08 BankToCustomerDebitCreditNotificationV08	The BankToCustomerDebitCreditNotification message is sent by the account servicer to an account owner or to a party authorised by the account owner to receive the message. It can be used to inform the account owner, or authorised party, of single or multiple debit and/or credit entries reported to the account.
camt.060.001.05 AccountReportingRequestV05	The AccountReportingRequest message is sent by the account owner, either directly or through a forwarding agent, to one of its account servicing institutions. It is used to ask the account servicing institution to send a report on the account owner's account in a BankToCustomerAccountReport (camt.052), a BankToCustomerStatement (camt.053) or a BankToCustomerDebitCreditNotification (camt.054).

## 2 camt.052.001.08

# BankToCustomerAccountReportV08

### 2.1 MessageDefinition Functionality

#### Scope

The BankToCustomerAccountReport message is sent by the account servicer to an account owner or to a party authorised by the account owner to receive the message. It can be used to inform the account owner, or authorised party, of the entries reported to the account, and/or to provide the owner with balance information on the account at a given point in time.

#### Usage

The BankToCustomerAccountReport message can contain reports for more than one account. It provides information for cash management and/or reconciliation. It can be used to:

- report pending and booked items;
- provide balance information.

It can include underlying details of transactions that have been included in the entry.

It is possible that the receiver of the message is not the account owner, but a party entitled by the account owner to receive the account information (also known as recipient).

For a statement, the Bank-to-Customer Account Statement message should be used.

#### Outline

The BankToCustomerAccountReportV08 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. GroupHeader

Common information for the message.

B. Report

Reports on a cash account.

C. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

## 2.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <BkToCstmrAcctRpt>	[1..1]		C16, C20	
	<b>GroupHeader</b> <GrpHdr>	[1..1]	±		9
	<b>Report</b> <Rpt>	[1..*]			9
	<b>Identification</b> <Id>	[1..1]	Text		12
	<b>ReportPagination</b> <RptPgtn>	[0..1]	±		12
	<b>ElectronicSequenceNumber</b> <ElctrncSeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		12
	<b>ReportingSequence</b> <RptgSeq>	[0..1]	±		12
	<b>LegalSequenceNumber</b> <LglSeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		13
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		13
	<b>FromToDate</b> <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		13
	<b>CopyDuplicateIndicator</b> <CpyDplctInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		13
	<b>ReportingSource</b> <RptgSrc>	[0..1]	±		14
	<b>Account</b> <Acct>	[1..1]	±		14
	<b>RelatedAccount</b> <RltdAcct>	[0..1]	±		14
	<b>Interest</b> <Intrst>	[0..*]			15
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]			16
{Or}	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		17
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		17
	<b>Rate</b> <Rate>	[0..*]			17
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]	±		17
	<b>ValidityRange</b> <VldtyRg>	[0..1]			18
	<b>Amount</b> <Amt>	[1..1]			18
{Or}	<b>FromAmount</b> <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		19
Or	<b>ToAmount</b> <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		19
Or	<b>FromToAmount</b> <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			19
	<b>FromAmount</b> <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		19
	<b>ToAmount</b> <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		20
Or	<b>EqualAmount</b> <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		20
Or}	<b>NotEqualAmount</b> <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		20

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator</b> <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		20
	<b>Currency</b> <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	20
	<b>FromToDate</b> <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		21
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		21
	<b>Tax</b> <Tax>	[0..1]			21
	<b>Identification</b> <Id>	[0..1]	Text		21
	<b>Rate</b> <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		21
	<b>Amount</b> <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	21
	<b>Balance</b> <Bal>	[0..*]		C12	22
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]	±		22
	<b>CreditLine</b> <CdtLine>	[0..*]	±		23
	<b>Amount</b> <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	23
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator</b> <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		24
	<b>Date</b> <Dt>	[1..1]	±		24
	<b>Availability</b> <Avlbt>	[0..*]	±		24
	<b>TransactionsSummary</b> <TxssSummry>	[0..1]	±		24
	<b>Entry</b> <Ntry>	[0..*]		C18	25
	<b>EntryReference</b> <NtryRef>	[0..1]	Text		26
	<b>Amount</b> <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	27
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator</b> <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		27
	<b>ReversalIndicator</b> <RvslInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		27
	<b>Status</b> <Sts>	[1..1]	±		27
	<b>BookingDate</b> <BookgDt>	[0..1]	±		28
	<b>ValueDate</b> <ValDt>	[0..1]	±		28
	<b>AccountServicerReference</b> <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		28
	<b>Availability</b> <Avlbt>	[0..*]	±		29
	<b>BankTransactionCode</b> <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	29
	<b>CommissionWaiverIndicator</b> <ComssnWvrInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		30
	<b>AdditionalInformationIndicator</b> <AddtlInflnd>	[0..1]			30
	<b>MessageNameIdentification</b> <MsgNmld>	[0..1]	Text		30
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		30

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>AmountDetails</b> <AmtDtls>	[0..1]	±		30
	<b>Charges</b> <Chrgs>	[0..1]	±		32
	<b>TechnicalInputChannel</b> <TechInptChnl>	[0..1]			32
{Or}	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		33
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		33
	<b>Interest</b> <Intrst>	[0..1]	±		33
	<b>CardTransaction</b> <CardTx>	[0..1]	±		34
	<b>EntryDetails</b> <NtryDtls>	[0..*]	±		36
	<b>AdditionalEntryInformation</b> <AddtlNtryInf>	[0..1]	Text		36
	<b>AdditionalReportInformation</b> <AddtlRptInf>	[0..1]	Text		37
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C21	37

## 2.3 Constraints

### C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C3 AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C4 BICFI

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C5 Country

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

### C6 CurrencyAmount

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**C7 CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**C8 DescriptionPresenceRule**

If Description is not present then either ISIN or at least one occurrence of OtherIdentification must be present.

**C9 DescriptionUsageRule**

Description must be used alone as the last resort.

**C10 DomainOrProprietaryRule**

Either Proprietary or Domain or both must be present.

**C11 FamilyAndSubFamilyRule**

If a specific (non-generic) Family code is not present, then a specific (non-generic) SubFamily code is not allowed.

**C12 ForwardBalanceAndAvailabilityRule**

If Type is equal to ForwardAvailable, Availability is not allowed.

**C13 IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

**C14 ISINGuideline**

When an ISIN code exists, it is strongly recommended that the ISIN be used.

**C15 ISINPresenceRule**

If ISIN is not present then either Description or at least one occurrence of OtherIdentification must be present.

**C16 MessageOrReportPaginationRule**

MessagePagination may be present or ReportPagination may be present, but not both.

Following Must be True  
/GroupHeader/MessagePagination Must be absent  
Or /Report[\*]/ReportPagination Must be absent

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

**C17 OtherIdentificationPresenceRule**

If OtherIdentification is not present then either ISIN or Description must be present.

**C18 ReferenceGuideline**

At least one reference should be present to identify the underlying transaction(s).

**C19 ReturnReasonRule**

If Reason/Code is equal to NARR, then AdditionalInformation must be present.

**C20 SupplementaryDataRule**

The SupplementaryData building block at message level must not be used to provide additional information about a transaction. The SupplementaryData element at transaction level should be used for that purpose.

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

**C21 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 2.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 2.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Common information for the message.

**GroupHeader <GrpHdr>** contains the following elements (see "[GroupHeader81](#)" on page 269 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		269
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		269
	MessageRecipient <MsgRpct>	[0..1]	±		269
	MessagePagination <MsgPgntn>	[0..1]	±		270
	OriginalBusinessQuery <OrgnlBizQry>	[0..1]	±		270
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInfr>	[0..1]	Text		270

### 2.4.2 Report <Rpt>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Reports on a cash account.

Report <Rpt> contains the following AccountReport25 elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Identification &lt;/d&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		12
	<b>ReportPagination &lt;RptPgtn&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		12
	<b>ElectronicSequenceNumber &lt;ElctrncSeqNb&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Quantity		12
	<b>ReportingSequence &lt;RptgSeq&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		12
	<b>LegalSequenceNumber &lt;Lg/SeqNb&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Quantity		13
	<b>CreationDateTime &lt;CreDtTm&gt;</b>	[0..1]	DateTime		13
	<b>FromToDate &lt;FrToDt&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		13
	<b>CopyDuplicateIndicator &lt;CpyDplctInd&gt;</b>	[0..1]	CodeSet		13
	<b>ReportingSource &lt;RptgSrc&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		14
	<b>Account &lt;Acct&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		14
	<b>RelatedAccount &lt;RltdAcct&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		14
	<b>Interest &lt;Intrst&gt;</b>	[0..*]			15
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[0..1]			16
{Or}	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		17
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		17
	<b>Rate &lt;Rate&gt;</b>	[0..*]			17
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		17
	<b>ValidityRange &lt;VldtyRg&gt;</b>	[0..1]			18
	<b>Amount &lt;Amt&gt;</b>	[1..1]			18
{Or}	<b>FromAmount &lt;FrAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		19
Or	<b>ToAmount &lt;ToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		19
Or	<b>FromToAmount &lt;FrToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]			19
	<b>FromAmount &lt;FrAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		19
	<b>ToAmount &lt;ToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		20
Or	<b>EqualAmount &lt;EQAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount		20
Or}	<b>NotEqualAmount &lt;NEQAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount		20
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator &lt;CdtDbtInd&gt;</b>	[0..1]	CodeSet		20
	<b>Currency &lt;Ccy&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	20
	<b>FromToDate &lt;FrToDt&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		21
	<b>Reason &lt;Rsn&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		21
	<b>Tax &lt;Tax&gt;</b>	[0..1]			21

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Identification &lt;Id&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		21
	<b>Rate &lt;Rate&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Rate		21
	<b>Amount &lt;Amt&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	21
	<b>Balance &lt;Bal&gt;</b>	[0..*]		C12	22
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		22
	<b>CreditLine &lt;CdtLine&gt;</b>	[0..*]	±		23
	<b>Amount &lt;Amt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	23
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator &lt;CdtDbtInd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		24
	<b>Date &lt;Dt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		24
	<b>Availability &lt;Avlbt&gt;</b>	[0..*]	±		24
	<b>TransactionsSummary &lt;Txssummary&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		24
	<b>Entry &lt;Ntry&gt;</b>	[0..*]		C18	25
	<b>EntryReference &lt;NtryRef&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		26
	<b>Amount &lt;Amt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	27
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator &lt;CdtDbtInd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		27
	<b>ReversalIndicator &lt;RvslInd&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Indicator		27
	<b>Status &lt;Sts&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		27
	<b>BookingDate &lt;BookgDt&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		28
	<b>ValueDate &lt;ValDt&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		28
	<b>AccountServicerReference &lt;AcctSvcrRef&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		28
	<b>Availability &lt;Avlbt&gt;</b>	[0..*]	±		29
	<b>BankTransactionCode &lt;BkTxCd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	29
	<b>CommissionWaiverIndicator &lt;ComssnWvrInd&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Indicator		30
	<b>AdditionalInformationIndicator &lt;AddtlInflnd&gt;</b>	[0..1]			30
	<b>MessageNameIdentification &lt;MsgNmld&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		30
	<b>MessageIdentification &lt;MsgId&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		30
	<b>AmountDetails &lt;AmtDtls&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		30
	<b>Charges &lt;Chrgs&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		32
	<b>TechnicalInputChannel &lt;TechInptChnl&gt;</b>	[0..1]			32
{Or}	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		33
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		33

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Interest &lt;Intrst&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		33
	<b>CardTransaction &lt;CardTx&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		34
	<b>EntryDetails &lt;NtryDtls&gt;</b>	[0..*]	±		36
	<b>AdditionalEntryInformation &lt;AddtlNtryInf&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		36
	<b>AdditionalReportInformation &lt;AddtlRptlntf&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		37

#### 2.4.2.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the account servicer, to unambiguously identify the account report.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 2.4.2.2 ReportPagination <RptPgntn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the page number of the report.

*Usage:* The pagination of the report is only allowed when agreed between the parties.

**ReportPagination <RptPgntn>** contains the following elements (see ["Pagination1" on page 271](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PageNumber <PgNb>	[1..1]	Text		272
	LastPageIndicator <LastPgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		272

#### 2.4.2.3 ElectronicSequenceNumber <ElctrncSeqNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Sequential number of the report, as assigned by the account servicer.

*Usage:* The sequential number is increased incrementally for each report sent electronically.

*Datatype:* ["Number" on page 369](#)

#### 2.4.2.4 ReportingSequence <RptgSeq>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the range of identification sequence numbers, as provided in the request.

**ReportingSequence <RptgSeq>** contains one of the following elements (see "SequenceRange1Choice" on page 251 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	FromSequence < <i>FrSeq</i> >	[1..1]	Text		252
Or	ToSequence < <i>ToSeq</i> >	[1..1]	Text		252
Or	FromToSequence < <i>FrToSeq</i> >	[1..*]			252
	FromSequence < <i>FrSeq</i> >	[1..1]	Text		252
	ToSequence < <i>ToSeq</i> >	[1..1]	Text		252
Or	EqualSequence < <i>EQSeq</i> >	[1..*]	Text		253
Or}	NotEqualSequence < <i>NEQSeq</i> >	[1..*]	Text		253

#### 2.4.2.5 LegalSequenceNumber <LglSeqNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Legal sequential number of the report, as assigned by the account servicer. It is increased incrementally for each report sent.

*Datatype:* "Number" on page 369

#### 2.4.2.6 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the report was created.

*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 366

#### 2.4.2.7 FromToDate <FrToDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Range of time between a start date and an end date for which the account report is issued.

**FromToDate <FrToDt>** contains the following elements (see "DateTimePeriod1" on page 234 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDateTime < <i>FrDtTm</i> >	[1..1]	DateTime		234
	ToDateTime < <i>ToDtTm</i> >	[1..1]	DateTime		235

#### 2.4.2.8 CopyDuplicateIndicator <CopyDplctInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the document is a copy, a duplicate, or a duplicate of a copy.

*Datatype:* "CopyDuplicate1Code" on page 349

CodeName	Name	Definition
CODU	CopyDuplicate	Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes and the message is a duplicate of a message previously sent.
COPY	Copy	Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes.
DUPL	Duplicate	Message is for information/confirmation purposes. It is a duplicate of a message previously sent.

#### 2.4.2.9 ReportingSource <RptgSrc>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the application used to generate the reporting.

**ReportingSource <RptgSrc>** contains one of the following elements (see "[ReportingSource1Choice](#)" on page [251](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251

#### 2.4.2.10 Account <Acct>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account to which credit and debit entries are made.

**Account <Acct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount39](#)" on page [115](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		115
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		116
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	116
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		116
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		116
	Owner <Ownr>	[0..1]	±		117
	Servicer <Svcr>	[0..1]	±		117

#### 2.4.2.11 RelatedAccount <RltdAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the parent account of the account for which the report has been issued.

**RelatedAccount <RltdAcct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount38](#)" on page [117](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification </d>	[1..1]	±		118
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		118
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	118
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		119
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		119

#### 2.4.2.12 Interest <Intrst>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides general interest information that applies to the account at a particular moment in time.

**Interest <Intrst>** contains the following **AccountInterest4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[0..1]			16
{Or}	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		17
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		17
	<b>Rate &lt;Rate&gt;</b>	[0..*]			17
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		17
	<b>ValidityRange &lt;VldtyRg&gt;</b>	[0..1]			18
	<b>Amount &lt;Amt&gt;</b>	[1..1]			18
{Or}	<b>FromAmount &lt;FrAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		19
Or	<b>ToAmount &lt;ToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		19
Or	<b>FromToAmount &lt;FrToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]			19
	<b>FromAmount &lt;FrAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		19
	<b>ToAmount &lt;ToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		20
Or	<b>EqualAmount &lt;EQAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount		20
Or}	<b>NotEqualAmount &lt;NEQAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount		20
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator &lt;CdtDbtInd&gt;</b>	[0..1]	CodeSet		20
	<b>Currency &lt;Ccy&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	20
	<b>FromToDate &lt;FrToDt&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		21
	<b>Reason &lt;Rsn&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		21
	<b>Tax &lt;Tax&gt;</b>	[0..1]			21
	<b>Identification &lt;Id&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		21
	<b>Rate &lt;Rate&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Rate		21
	<b>Amount &lt;Amt&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	21

#### 2.4.2.12.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of interest.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **InterestType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		17
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		17

#### 2.4.2.12.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of interest.

*Datatype:* "InterestType1Code" on page 359

CodeName	Name	Definition
INDY	IntraDay	During or within a business day.
OVRN	OverNight	Period of time between the end of a business day and the start of the next business day (usually the day after).

#### 2.4.2.12.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of interest in uncoded form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 372

#### 2.4.2.12.2 Rate <Rate>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to qualify the interest rate.

**Rate <Rate>** contains the following **Rate4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		17
	<b>ValidityRange &lt;VldtyRg&gt;</b>	[0..1]			18
	<b>Amount &lt;Amt&gt;</b>	[1..1]			18
{Or}	<b>FromAmount &lt;FrAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		19
Or	<b>ToAmount &lt;ToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		19
Or	<b>FromToAmount &lt;FrToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]			19
	<b>FromAmount &lt;FrAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		19
	<b>ToAmount &lt;ToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		20
Or	<b>EqualAmount &lt;EQAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount		20
Or}	<b>NotEqualAmount &lt;NEQAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount		20
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator &lt;CdtDbtInd&gt;</b>	[0..1]	CodeSet		20
	<b>Currency &lt;Ccy&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	20

#### 2.4.2.12.2.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of interest rate.

Type **<Tp>** contains one of the following elements (see "RateType4Choice" on page 297 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Percentage <Pctg>	[1..1]	Rate		297
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]	Text		297

#### 2.4.2.12.2.2 ValidityRange <VldtyRg>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: An amount range where the interest rate is applicable.

ValidityRange <VldtyRg> contains the following ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmountRange2 elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			18
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		19
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		19
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			19
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		19
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		20
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		20
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		20
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		20
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	20

#### 2.4.2.12.2.2.1 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specified amount or amount range.

Amount <Amt> contains one of the following ImpliedCurrencyAmountRange1Choice elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		19
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		19
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			19
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		19
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		20
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		20
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		20

#### 2.4.2.12.2.2.1.1 FromAmount <FrAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Lower boundary of a range of amount values.

**FromAmount <FrAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 138 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		138
	Included </Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		138

#### 2.4.2.12.2.2.1.2 ToAmount <ToAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Upper boundary of a range of amount values.

**ToAmount <ToAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 138 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		138
	Included </Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		138

#### 2.4.2.12.2.2.1.3 FromToAmount <FrToAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Range of valid amount values.

**FromToAmount <FrToAmt>** contains the following **FromToAmountRange1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>FromAmount &lt;FrAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		19
	<b>ToAmount &lt;ToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		20

#### 2.4.2.12.2.2.1.3.1 FromAmount <FrAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Lower boundary of a range of amount values.

**FromAmount <FrAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 138 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		138
	Included </Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		138

### 2.4.2.12.2.2.1.3.2 ToAmount <ToAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Upper boundary of a range of amount values.

**ToAmount <ToAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 138 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount < <i>BdryAmt</i> >	[1..1]	Amount		138
	Included < <i>Incl</i> >	[1..1]	Indicator		138

### 2.4.2.12.2.2.1.4 EqualAmount <EQAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Exact value an amount must match to be considered valid.

*Datatype:* "[ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount](#)" on page 344

### 2.4.2.12.2.2.1.5 NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Value that an amount must not match to be considered valid.

*Datatype:* "[ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount](#)" on page 344

### 2.4.2.12.2.2.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the amount is a credited or debited amount.

*Datatype:* "[CreditDebitCode](#)" on page 350

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

### 2.4.2.12.2.2.3 Currency <Ccy>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Medium of exchange of value, used to qualify an amount.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#)

*Datatype:* "[ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode](#)" on page 345

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3)

contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 2.4.2.12.3 FromToDate <FrToDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Range of time between a start date and an end date for the calculation of the interest.

**FromToDate <FrToDt>** contains the following elements (see "["DateTimePeriod1" on page 234](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDateTime < <i>FrDtTm</i> >	[1..1]	DateTime		234
	ToDateTime < <i>ToDtTm</i> >	[1..1]	DateTime		235

#### 2.4.2.12.4 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the interest.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 2.4.2.12.5 Tax <Tax>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the tax applied to charges.

**Tax <Tax>** contains the following **TaxCharges2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Identification &lt;<i>Id</i>&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		21
	<b>Rate &lt;<i>Rate</i>&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Rate		21
	<b>Amount &lt;<i>Amt</i>&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	21

##### 2.4.2.12.5.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique reference to unambiguously identify the nature of the tax levied, such as Value Added Tax (VAT).

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text" on page 372](#)

##### 2.4.2.12.5.2 Rate <Rate>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Rate used to calculate the tax.

*Datatype:* "[PercentageRate" on page 370](#)

##### 2.4.2.12.5.3 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money resulting from the calculation of the tax.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344](#)

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### 2.4.2.13 Balance <Bal>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to define the balance as a numerical representation of the net increases and decreases in an account at a specific point in time.

*Impacted by:* [C12 "ForwardBalanceAndAvailabilityRule"](#)

Balance <Bal> contains the following **CashBalance8** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]	±		22
	<b>CreditLine</b> <CdtLine>	[0..*]	±		23
	<b>Amount</b> <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	23
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator</b> <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		24
	<b>Date</b> <Dt>	[1..1]	±		24
	<b>Availability</b> <Avlbt>	[0..*]	±		24

#### Constraints

- **ForwardBalanceAndAvailabilityRule**

If Type is equal to ForwardAvailable, Availability is not allowed.

### 2.4.2.13.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the nature of a balance.

Type **<Tp>** contains the following elements (see "[BalanceType13](#)" on page 138 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			139
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		139
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		139
	SubType <SubTp>	[0..1]			139
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		139
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		139

#### 2.4.2.13.2 CreditLine <CdtLine>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the credit line.

**CreditLine <CdtLine>** contains the following elements (see "[CreditLine3](#)" on page 139 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Included </Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		140
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			140
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		140
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		140
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	140
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	±		141

#### 2.4.2.13.3 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money of the cash balance.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount"](#) on page 344

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 2.4.2.13.4 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the balance is a credit or a debit balance.

*Usage:* A zero balance is considered to be a credit balance.

*Datatype:* "CreditDebitCode" on page 350

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

#### 2.4.2.13.5 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates the date (and time) of the balance.

**Date <Dt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DateAndDateTime2Choice](#)" on page 234 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		234
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		234

#### 2.4.2.13.6 Availability <Avlbtty>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to indicate when the booked amount of money will become available, that is can be accessed and starts generating interest.

*Usage:* This type of information is used in the US and is linked to particular instruments such as cheques.

*Example:* When a cheque is deposited, it will be booked on the deposit day, but the amount of money will only be accessible as of the indicated availability day (according to national banking regulations).

**Availability <Avlbtty>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAvailability1](#)" on page 187 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			187
{Or	NumberOfDays <NbOfDays>	[1..1]	Text		187
Or}	ActualDate <ActlDt>	[1..1]	Date		187
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	188
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		188

#### 2.4.2.14 TransactionsSummary <Txssummary>

*Presence:* [0..1]

**Definition:** Provides summary information on entries.

**TransactionsSummary <TxssSummary>** contains the following elements (see "[TotalTransactions6](#)" on page 264 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalEntries <TtlNtries>	[0..1]			264
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		265
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		265
	TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>	[0..1]	±		265
	TotalCreditEntries <TtlCdtNtries>	[0..1]	±		265
	TotalDebitEntries <TtlDbtNtries>	[0..1]	±		265
	TotalEntriesPerBankTransactionCode <TtlNtriesPerBkTxCd>	[0..*]			266
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		266
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		266
	TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>	[0..1]	±		266
	CreditEntries <CdtNtries>	[0..1]	±		267
	DebitEntries <DbtNtries>	[0..1]	±		267
	ForecastIndicator <FcstInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		267
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	267
	Availability <Avlbtty>	[0..*]	±		268
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	±		268

#### 2.4.2.15 Entry <Ntry>

**Presence:** [0..\*]

**Definition:** Specifies an entry in the report.

**Usage:** At least one reference must be provided to identify the entry and its underlying transaction(s).

**Usage Rule:** In case of a Payments R-transaction the creditor / debtor referenced of the original payment initiation messages is also used for reporting of the R-transaction. The original debtor/creditor in the reporting of R-Transactions is not inverted.

Following elements all defined in the TransactionDetails in RelatedParties or RelatedAgents are impacted by this usage rule:

Creditor, UltimateCreditor, CreditorAccount, CreditorAgent, Debtor, UltimateDebtor, DebtorAccount and DebtorAgent.

*Impacted by: C18 "ReferenceGuideline"*

Entry <Ntry> contains the following ReportEntry10 elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>EntryReference</b> <NtryRef>	[0..1]	Text		26
	<b>Amount</b> <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	27
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator</b> <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		27
	<b>ReversalIndicator</b> <RvslInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		27
	<b>Status</b> <Sts>	[1..1]	±		27
	<b>BookingDate</b> <BookgDt>	[0..1]	±		28
	<b>ValueDate</b> <ValDt>	[0..1]	±		28
	<b>AccountServicerReference</b> <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		28
	<b>Availability</b> <Avlbtty>	[0..*]	±		29
	<b>BankTransactionCode</b> <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	29
	<b>CommissionWaiverIndicator</b> <ComssnWvrInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		30
	<b>AdditionalInformationIndicator</b> <AddtlInflnd>	[0..1]			30
	<b>MessageNameIdentification</b> <MsgNmId>	[0..1]	Text		30
	<b>MessageIdIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		30
	<b>AmountDetails</b> <AmtDtls>	[0..1]	±		30
	<b>Charges</b> <Chrgs>	[0..1]	±		32
	<b>TechnicalInputChannel</b> <TechInptChnl>	[0..1]			32
{Or}	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		33
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		33
	<b>Interest</b> <Inrst>	[0..1]	±		33
	<b>CardTransaction</b> <CardTx>	[0..1]	±		34
	<b>EntryDetails</b> <NtryDtls>	[0..*]	±		36
	<b>AdditionalEntryInformation</b> <AddtlNtryInf>	[0..1]	Text		36

#### Constraints

- **ReferenceGuideline**

At least one reference should be present to identify the underlying transaction(s).

#### 2.4.2.15.1 EntryReference <NtryRef>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique reference for the entry.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 372

#### 2.4.2.15.2 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money in the cash entry.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344](#)

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 2.4.2.15.3 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the entry is a credit or a debit entry.

*Datatype:* ["CreditDebitCode" on page 350](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

#### 2.4.2.15.4 ReversalIndicator <RvsInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether or not the entry is the result of a reversal.

*Usage:* This element should only be present if the entry is the result of a reversal.

If the CreditDebitIndicator is CRDT and ReversalIndicator is Yes, the original operation was a debit entry.

If the CreditDebitIndicator is DBIT and ReversalIndicator is Yes, the original operation was a credit entry.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see ["TrueFalseIndicator" on page 368](#)):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 2.4.2.15.5 Status <Sts>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Status of an entry on the books of the account servicer.

**Status <Sts>** contains one of the following elements (see "[EntryStatus1Choice](#)" on page 328 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		328
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		328

#### 2.4.2.15.6 BookingDate <BookgDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time when an entry is posted to an account on the account servicer's books.

*Usage:* Booking date is the expected booking date, unless the status is booked, in which case it is the actual booking date.

**BookingDate <BookgDt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DateAndDateTime2Choice](#)" on page 234 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		234
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		234

#### 2.4.2.15.7 ValueDate <ValDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which assets become available to the account owner in case of a credit entry, or cease to be available to the account owner in case of a debit entry.

*Usage:* If entry status is pending and value date is present, then the value date refers to an expected/requested value date.

For entries subject to availability/float and for which availability information is provided, the value date must not be used. In this case the availability component identifies the number of availability days.

**ValueDate <ValDt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DateAndDateTime2Choice](#)" on page 234 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		234
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		234

#### 2.4.2.15.8 AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique reference as assigned by the account servicing institution to unambiguously identify the entry.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

#### 2.4.2.15.9 Availability <Avlbty>

Presence: [0..\*]

**Definition:** Indicates when the booked amount of money will become available, that is can be accessed and starts generating interest.

**Usage:** This type of information is used in the US and is linked to particular instruments such as cheques.

**Example:** When a cheque is deposited, it will be booked on the deposit day, but the amount of money will only be accessible as of the indicated availability day (according to national banking regulations).

**Availability <Avlbty>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAvailability1](#)" on page 187 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			187
{Or}	NumberOfDays <NbOfDays>	[1..1]	Text		187
Or}	ActualDate <ActlDt>	[1..1]	Date		187
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	188
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		188

#### 2.4.2.15.10 BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>

Presence: [1..1]

**Definition:** Set of elements used to fully identify the type of underlying transaction resulting in an entry.

**Impacted by:** [C10 "DomainOrProprietaryRule"](#), [C11 "FamilyAndSubFamilyRule"](#)

**BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>** contains the following elements (see "[BankTransactionCodeStructure4](#)" on page 141 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Domain <Domn>	[0..1]	±		142
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..1]			142
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	Text		142
	Issuer <ssr>	[0..1]	Text		142

#### Constraints

- **DomainOrProprietaryRule**

Either Proprietary or Domain or both must be present.

Following Must be True  
 /Domain Must be present  
 Or      /Proprietary Must be present

- **FamilyAndSubFamilyRule**

If a specific (non-generic) Family code is not present, then a specific (non-generic) SubFamily code is not allowed.

#### 2.4.2.15.11 CommissionWaiverIndicator <ComssnWvrInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the transaction is exempt from commission.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "[YesNoIndicator](#)" on page 368):

- *Meaning When True:* Yes
- *Meaning When False:* No

#### 2.4.2.15.12 AdditionalInformationIndicator <AddtlInflnd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the underlying transaction details are provided through a separate message, as in the case of aggregate bookings.

**AdditionalInformationIndicator <AddtlInflnd>** contains the following **MessageIdentification2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>MessageNameIdentification &lt;MsgNmId&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		30
	<b>MessageIdentification &lt;MsgId&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		30

##### 2.4.2.15.12.1 MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the message name identifier of the message that will be used to provide additional details.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

##### 2.4.2.15.12.2 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the identification of the message that will be used to provide additional details.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

#### 2.4.2.15.13 AmountDetails <AmtDtls>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides information on the original amount.

*Usage:* This component (on entry level) should be used when a total original batch or aggregate amount has to be provided. If required, the individual original amounts can be included in the same component on transaction details level.

**AmountDetails <AmtDtls>** contains the following elements (see "AmountAndCurrencyExchange3" on page 121 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InstructedAmount <InstdAmt>	[0..1]			123
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	124
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			124
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	124
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	125
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	125
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		125
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		125
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		126
	TransactionAmount <TxAmt>	[0..1]			126
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	126
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			126
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	127
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	127
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	127
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		128
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		128
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		128
	CounterValueAmount <CntrValAmt>	[0..1]			128
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	129
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			129
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	130
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	130
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	130
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		131
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		131
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		131
	AnnouncedPostingAmount <AnncdPstngAmt>	[0..1]			131
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	132
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			132

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	133
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	133
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	133
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		134
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		134
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		134
	ProprietaryAmount <PrtryAmt>	[0..*]			134
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		135
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	135
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			135
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	136
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	136
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	136
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		137
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		137
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		137

#### 2.4.2.15.14 Charges <Chrgs>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides information on the charges, pre-advised or included in the entry amount.

Usage: This component is used on entry level in case of batch or aggregate bookings.

Charges <Chrgs> contains the following elements (see "[Charges6](#)" on page 228 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalChargesAndTaxAmount <TtlChrgsAndTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	228
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]	±		228

#### 2.4.2.15.15 TechnicalInputChannel <TechInptChnl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Channel used to technically input the instruction related to the entry.

**TechnicalInputChannel <TechInptChnl>** contains one of the following  
**TechnicalInputChannel1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		33
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		33

#### 2.4.2.15.1 **Code <Cd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Technical input channel, as published in an external technical input channel code list.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalTechnicalInputChannel1Code" on page 358](#)

#### 2.4.2.15.2 **Proprietary <Prtry>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Technical channel used to input the instruction, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 2.4.2.15.16 **Interest <Intrst>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details of the interest amount included in the entry amount.

*Usage:* This component is used on entry level in the case of batch or aggregate bookings.

**Interest <Intrst>** contains the following elements (see "[TransactionInterest4](#)" on page 254 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalInterestAndTaxAmount < <i>TtlIntrstAndTaxAmt</i> >	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	255
	Record < <i>Rcrd</i> >	[0..*]			256
	Amount < <i>Amt</i> >	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	257
	CreditDebitIndicator < <i>CdtDbtInd</i> >	[1..1]	CodeSet		258
	Type < <i>Tp</i> >	[0..1]			258
{Or}	Code < <i>Cd</i> >	[1..1]	CodeSet		258
Or}	Proprietary < <i>Prtry</i> >	[1..1]	Text		258
	Rate < <i>Rate</i> >	[0..1]			259
	Type < <i>Tp</i> >	[1..1]	±		259
	ValidityRange < <i>VldtyRg</i> >	[0..1]			259
	Amount < <i>Amt</i> >	[1..1]			260
{Or}	FromAmount < <i>FrAmt</i> >	[1..1]	±		260
Or	ToAmount < <i>ToAmt</i> >	[1..1]	±		261
Or	FromToAmount < <i>FrToAmt</i> >	[1..1]			261
	FromAmount < <i>FrAmt</i> >	[1..1]	±		261
	ToAmount < <i>ToAmt</i> >	[1..1]	±		261
Or	EqualAmount < <i>EQAmt</i> >	[1..1]	Amount		262
Or}	NotEqualAmount < <i>NEQAmt</i> >	[1..1]	Amount		262
	CreditDebitIndicator < <i>CdtDbtInd</i> >	[0..1]	CodeSet		262
	Currency < <i>Ccy</i> >	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	262
	FromToDate < <i>FrToDt</i> >	[0..1]	±		262
	Reason < <i>Rsn</i> >	[0..1]	Text		263
	Tax < <i>Tax</i> >	[0..1]			263
	Identification < <i>Id</i> >	[0..1]	Text		263
	Rate < <i>Rate</i> >	[0..1]	Rate		263
	Amount < <i>Amt</i> >	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	263

#### 2.4.2.15.17 CardTransaction <CardTx>

**Presence:** [0..1]

**Definition:** Provides details of the card transaction included in the entry amount, when globalised by the account servicer.

**CardTransaction <CardTx>** contains the following elements (see "CardEntry4" on page 144 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Card <Card>	[0..1]			146
	PlainCardData <PlainCardData>	[0..1]			147
	PAN <PAN>	[1..1]	Text		148
	CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		148
	EffectiveDate <FctvDt>	[0..1]	YearMonth		148
	ExpiryDate <XpryDt>	[1..1]	YearMonth		148
	ServiceCode <SvcCd>	[0..1]	Text		148
	TrackData <TrckData>	[0..*]			149
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		149
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		149
	CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>	[0..1]			149
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		149
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		150
	CardCountryCode <CardCtryCd>	[0..1]	Text		150
	CardBrand <CardBrnd>	[0..1]	±		150
	AdditionalCardData <AddtlCardData>	[0..1]	Text		150
	POI <POI>	[0..1]			150
	Identification </d>	[1..1]	±		151
	SystemName <SysNm>	[0..1]	Text		152
	GroupIdentification <Grpld>	[0..1]	Text		152
	Capabilities <Cpbilities>	[0..1]			152
	CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpbilities>	[0..*]	CodeSet		152
	CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrdhldrVrfctnCpbilities>	[0..*]	CodeSet		153
	OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpbilities>	[0..1]	CodeSet		153
	DisplayCapabilities <DispCpbilities>	[0..*]			154
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		154
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		154
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		154
	PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>	[0..1]	Text		154
	Component <Cmpnt>	[0..*]			154

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	POICOMPONENTTYPE <POICmpntTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		155
	ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrlId>	[0..1]	Text		155
	Model <Mdl>	[0..1]	Text		155
	VersionNumber <VrsnNb>	[0..1]	Text		155
	SerialNumber <SrlNb>	[0..1]	Text		156
	ApprovalNumber <ApprvlNb>	[0..*]	Text		156
	AggregatedEntry <AggtdNtry>	[0..1]			156
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		156
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		157
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>	[0..1]	Text		157
	SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>	[0..1]			157
	FirstTransaction <FrstTx>	[0..1]	Text		157
	LastTransaction <LastTx>	[0..1]	Text		157
	TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>	[0..1]	±		158
	PrePaidAccount <PrePdAcct>	[0..1]	±		158

#### 2.4.2.15.18 EntryDetails <NtryDtls>

Presence: [0..\*]

Definition: Provides details on the entry.

EntryDetails <NtryDtls> contains the following elements (see "EntryDetails9" on page 223 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Batch <Btch>	[0..1]			223
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		223
	PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInfld>	[0..1]	Text		223
	NumberOfTransactions <NbOfTxns>	[0..1]	Text		224
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	224
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		224
	TransactionDetails <TxDtls>	[0..*]	±		224

#### 2.4.2.15.19 AdditionalEntryInformation <AddtlNtryInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Further details of the entry.

Datatype: "Max500Text" on page 373

#### 2.4.2.16 AdditionalReportInformation <AddtlRptInfo>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Further details of the account report.

*Datatype:* "Max500Text" on page 373

### 2.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* C21 "SupplementaryDataRule"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "[SupplementaryData1](#)" on page 279 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		279
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		279

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

### 3 **camt.053.001.08**

## **BankToCustomerStatementV08**

#### **3.1 MessageDefinition Functionality**

##### Scope

The BankToCustomerStatement message is sent by the account servicer to an account owner or to a party authorised by the account owner to receive the message. It is used to inform the account owner, or authorised party, of the entries booked to the account, and to provide the owner with balance information on the account at a given point in time.

##### Usage

The BankToCustomerStatement message can contain reports for more than one account. It provides information for cash management and/or reconciliation.

It contains information on booked entries only.

It can include underlying details of transactions that have been included in the entry.

The message is exchanged as defined between the account servicer and the account owner. It provides information on items that have been booked to the account and also balance information. Depending on services and schedule agreed between banks and their customers, statements may be generated and exchanged accordingly, for example for intraday or prior day periods.

It is possible that the receiver of the message is not the account owner, but a party entitled through arrangement with the account owner to receive the account information (also known as recipient).

##### Outline

The BankToCustomerStatementV08 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. GroupHeader

Common information for the message.

B. Statement

Reports on booked entries and balances for a cash account.

C. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

## 3.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Message root &lt;Document&gt; &lt;BkToCstmrStmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]		C16, C20	
	<b>GroupHeader &lt;GrpHdr&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		43
	<b>Statement &lt;Stmt&gt;</b>	[1..*]			43
	<b>Identification &lt;Id&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		46
	<b>StatementPagination &lt;StmtPgtn&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		46
	<b>ElectronicSequenceNumber &lt;ElctrncSeqNb&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Quantity		46
	<b>ReportingSequence &lt;RptgSeq&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		46
	<b>LegalSequenceNumber &lt;LglSeqNb&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Quantity		47
	<b>CreationDateTime &lt;CreDtTm&gt;</b>	[0..1]	DateTime		47
	<b>FromToDate &lt;FrToDt&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		47
	<b>CopyDuplicateIndicator &lt;CpyDplctInd&gt;</b>	[0..1]	CodeSet		47
	<b>ReportingSource &lt;RptgSrc&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		48
	<b>Account &lt;Acct&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		48
	<b>RelatedAccount &lt;RltdAcct&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		48
	<b>Interest &lt;Intrst&gt;</b>	[0..*]			49
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[0..1]			50
{Or}	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		51
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		51
	<b>Rate &lt;Rate&gt;</b>	[0..*]			51
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		51
	<b>ValidityRange &lt;VldtyRg&gt;</b>	[0..1]			52
	<b>Amount &lt;Amt&gt;</b>	[1..1]			52
{Or}	<b>FromAmount &lt;FrAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		53
Or	<b>ToAmount &lt;ToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		53
Or	<b>FromToAmount &lt;FrToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]			53
	<b>FromAmount &lt;FrAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		53
	<b>ToAmount &lt;ToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		54
Or	<b>EqualAmount &lt;EQAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount		54
Or}	<b>NotEqualAmount &lt;NEQAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount		54

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator</b> <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		54
	<b>Currency</b> <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	54
	<b>FromToDate</b> <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		55
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		55
	<b>Tax</b> <Tax>	[0..1]			55
	<b>Identification</b> <Id>	[0..1]	Text		55
	<b>Rate</b> <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		55
	<b>Amount</b> <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	55
	<b>Balance</b> <Bal>	[1..*]		C12	56
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]	±		56
	<b>CreditLine</b> <CdtLine>	[0..*]	±		57
	<b>Amount</b> <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	57
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator</b> <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		58
	<b>Date</b> <Dt>	[1..1]	±		58
	<b>Availability</b> <Avlbt>	[0..*]	±		58
	<b>TransactionsSummary</b> <TxssSummry>	[0..1]	±		58
	<b>Entry</b> <Ntry>	[0..*]		C18	59
	<b>EntryReference</b> <NtryRef>	[0..1]	Text		60
	<b>Amount</b> <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	61
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator</b> <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		61
	<b>ReversalIndicator</b> <RvslInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		61
	<b>Status</b> <Sts>	[1..1]	±		61
	<b>BookingDate</b> <BookgDt>	[0..1]	±		62
	<b>ValueDate</b> <ValDt>	[0..1]	±		62
	<b>AccountServicerReference</b> <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		62
	<b>Availability</b> <Avlbt>	[0..*]	±		63
	<b>BankTransactionCode</b> <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	63
	<b>CommissionWaiverIndicator</b> <ComssnWvrInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		64
	<b>AdditionalInformationIndicator</b> <AddtlInflnd>	[0..1]			64
	<b>MessageNameIdentification</b> <MsgNmld>	[0..1]	Text		64
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		64

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>AmountDetails</b> <AmtDtls>	[0..1]	±		64
	<b>Charges</b> <Chrgs>	[0..1]	±		66
	<b>TechnicalInputChannel</b> <TechInptChnl>	[0..1]			66
{Or}	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		67
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		67
	<b>Interest</b> <Intrst>	[0..1]	±		67
	<b>CardTransaction</b> <CardTx>	[0..1]	±		68
	<b>EntryDetails</b> <NtryDtls>	[0..*]	±		70
	<b>AdditionalEntryInformation</b> <AddtlNtryInft>	[0..1]	Text		70
	<b>AdditionalStatementInformation</b> <AddtlStmtInft>	[0..1]	Text		71
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C21	71

### 3.3 Constraints

#### C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### C3 AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

#### C4 BICFI

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

#### C5 Country

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

#### C6 CurrencyAmount

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**C7 CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**C8 DescriptionPresenceRule**

If Description is not present then either ISIN or at least one occurrence of OtherIdentification must be present.

**C9 DescriptionUsageRule**

Description must be used alone as the last resort.

**C10 DomainOrProprietaryRule**

Either Proprietary or Domain or both must be present.

**C11 FamilyAndSubFamilyRule**

If a specific (non-generic) Family code is not present, then a specific (non-generic) SubFamily code is not allowed.

**C12 ForwardBalanceAndAvailabilityRule**

If Type is equal to ForwardAvailable, Availability is not allowed.

**C13 IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

**C14 ISINGuideline**

When an ISIN code exists, it is strongly recommended that the ISIN be used.

**C15 ISINPresenceRule**

If ISIN is not present then either Description or at least one occurrence of OtherIdentification must be present.

**C16 MessageOrStatementPaginationRule**

MessagePagination may be present or StatementPagination may be present, but not both.

Following Must be True

/GroupHeader/MessagePagination Must be absent

Or /Statement[\*]/StatementPagination Must be absent

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

**C17 OtherIdentificationPresenceRule**

If OtherIdentification is not present then either ISIN or Description must be present.

**C18 ReferenceGuideline**

At least one reference should be present to identify the underlying transaction(s).

**C19 ReturnReasonRule**

If Reason/Code is equal to NARR, then AdditionalInformation must be present.

**C20 SupplementaryDataRule**

The SupplementaryData building block at message level must not be used to provide additional information about a transaction. The SupplementaryData element at transaction level should be used for that purpose.

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

**C21 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 3.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 3.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Common information for the message.

**GroupHeader <GrpHdr>** contains the following elements (see "[GroupHeader81](#)" on page 269 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		269
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		269
	MessageRecipient <MsgRpct>	[0..1]	±		269
	MessagePagination <MsgPgntn>	[0..1]	±		270
	OriginalBusinessQuery <OrgnlBizQry>	[0..1]	±		270
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInfr>	[0..1]	Text		270

### 3.4.2 Statement <Stmt>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Reports on booked entries and balances for a cash account.

**Statement <Stmt>** contains the following **AccountStatement9** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Identification &lt;/d&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		46
	<b>StatementPagination &lt;StmtPgtn&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		46
	<b>ElectronicSequenceNumber &lt;ElctrncSeqNb&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Quantity		46
	<b>ReportingSequence &lt;RptgSeq&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		46
	<b>LegalSequenceNumber &lt;Lg/SeqNb&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Quantity		47
	<b>CreationDateTime &lt;CreDtTm&gt;</b>	[0..1]	DateTime		47
	<b>FromToDate &lt;FrToDt&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		47
	<b>CopyDuplicateIndicator &lt;CpyDplctInd&gt;</b>	[0..1]	CodeSet		47
	<b>ReportingSource &lt;RptgSrc&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		48
	<b>Account &lt;Acct&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		48
	<b>RelatedAccount &lt;RltdAcct&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		48
	<b>Interest &lt;Intrst&gt;</b>	[0..*]			49
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[0..1]			50
{Or}	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		51
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		51
	<b>Rate &lt;Rate&gt;</b>	[0..*]			51
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		51
	<b>ValidityRange &lt;VldtyRg&gt;</b>	[0..1]			52
	<b>Amount &lt;Amt&gt;</b>	[1..1]			52
{Or}	<b>FromAmount &lt;FrAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		53
Or	<b>ToAmount &lt;ToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		53
Or	<b>FromToAmount &lt;FrToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]			53
	<b>FromAmount &lt;FrAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		53
	<b>ToAmount &lt;ToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		54
Or	<b>EqualAmount &lt;EQAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount		54
Or}	<b>NotEqualAmount &lt;NEQAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount		54
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator &lt;CdtDbtInd&gt;</b>	[0..1]	CodeSet		54
	<b>Currency &lt;Ccy&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	54
	<b>FromToDate &lt;FrToDt&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		55
	<b>Reason &lt;Rsn&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		55
	<b>Tax &lt;Tax&gt;</b>	[0..1]			55

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Identification &lt;Id&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		55
	<b>Rate &lt;Rate&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Rate		55
	<b>Amount &lt;Amt&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	55
	<b>Balance &lt;Bal&gt;</b>	[1..*]		C12	56
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		56
	<b>CreditLine &lt;CdtLine&gt;</b>	[0..*]	±		57
	<b>Amount &lt;Amt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	57
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator &lt;CdtDbtInd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		58
	<b>Date &lt;Dt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		58
	<b>Availability &lt;Avlbt&gt;</b>	[0..*]	±		58
	<b>TransactionsSummary &lt;Txssummary&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		58
	<b>Entry &lt;Ntry&gt;</b>	[0..*]		C18	59
	<b>EntryReference &lt;NtryRef&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		60
	<b>Amount &lt;Amt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	61
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator &lt;CdtDbtInd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		61
	<b>ReversalIndicator &lt;RvslInd&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Indicator		61
	<b>Status &lt;Sts&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		61
	<b>BookingDate &lt;BookgDt&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		62
	<b>ValueDate &lt;ValDt&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		62
	<b>AccountServicerReference &lt;AcctSvcrRef&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		62
	<b>Availability &lt;Avlbt&gt;</b>	[0..*]	±		63
	<b>BankTransactionCode &lt;BkTxCd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	63
	<b>CommissionWaiverIndicator &lt;ComssnWvrInd&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Indicator		64
	<b>AdditionalInformationIndicator &lt;AddtlInflnd&gt;</b>	[0..1]			64
	<b>MessageNameIdentification &lt;MsgNmld&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		64
	<b>MessageIdentification &lt;MsgId&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		64
	<b>AmountDetails &lt;AmtDtls&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		64
	<b>Charges &lt;Chrgs&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		66
	<b>TechnicalInputChannel &lt;TechInptChnl&gt;</b>	[0..1]			66
{Or}	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		67
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		67

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Interest &lt;Intrst&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		67
	<b>CardTransaction &lt;CardTx&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		68
	<b>EntryDetails &lt;NtryDtls&gt;</b>	[0..*]	±		70
	<b>AdditionalEntryInformation &lt;AddtlNtryInf&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		70
	<b>AdditionalStatementInformation &lt;AddtlStmtInf&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		71

### 3.4.2.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the account servicer, to unambiguously identify the account statement.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

### 3.4.2.2 StatementPagination <StmtPgntn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the page number of the statement.

*Usage:* The pagination of the statement is only allowed when agreed between the parties.

**StatementPagination <StmtPgntn>** contains the following elements (see ["Pagination1" on page 271](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PageNumber <PgNb>	[1..1]	Text		272
	LastPageIndicator <LastPgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		272

### 3.4.2.3 ElectronicSequenceNumber <ElctrncSeqNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Sequential number of the statement, as assigned by the account servicer.

*Usage:* The sequential number is increased incrementally for each statement sent electronically.

*Datatype:* ["Number" on page 369](#)

### 3.4.2.4 ReportingSequence <RptgSeq>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the range of identification sequence numbers, as provided in the request.

**ReportingSequence <RptgSeq>** contains one of the following elements (see "SequenceRange1Choice" on page 251 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	FromSequence < <i>FrSeq</i> >	[1..1]	Text		252
Or	ToSequence < <i>ToSeq</i> >	[1..1]	Text		252
Or	FromToSequence < <i>FrToSeq</i> >	[1..*]			252
	FromSequence < <i>FrSeq</i> >	[1..1]	Text		252
	ToSequence < <i>ToSeq</i> >	[1..1]	Text		252
Or	EqualSequence < <i>EQSeq</i> >	[1..*]	Text		253
Or}	NotEqualSequence < <i>NEQSeq</i> >	[1..*]	Text		253

### 3.4.2.5 LegalSequenceNumber <LglSeqNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Legal sequential number of the statement, as assigned by the account servicer. It is increased incrementally for each statement sent.

*Usage:* Where a paper statement is a legal requirement, it may have a number different from the electronic sequential number. Paper statements could for instance only be sent if movement on the account has taken place, whereas electronic statements could be sent at the end of each reporting period, regardless of whether movements have taken place or not.

*Datatype:* ["Number" on page 369](#)

### 3.4.2.6 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the statement was created.

*Datatype:* ["ISODateTime" on page 366](#)

### 3.4.2.7 FromToDate <FrToDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Range of time between a start date and an end date for which the account statement is issued.

**FromToDate <FrToDt>** contains the following elements (see "DateTimePeriod1" on page 234 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDateTime < <i>FrDtTm</i> >	[1..1]	DateTime		234
	ToDateTime < <i>ToDtTm</i> >	[1..1]	DateTime		235

### 3.4.2.8 CopyDuplicateIndicator <CopyDplctInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

**Definition:** Indicates whether the document is a copy, a duplicate, or a duplicate of a copy.

**Datatype:** ["CopyDuplicate1Code" on page 349](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
CODU	CopyDuplicate	Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes and the message is a duplicate of a message previously sent.
COPY	Copy	Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes.
DUPL	Duplicate	Message is for information/confirmation purposes. It is a duplicate of a message previously sent.

### 3.4.2.9 ReportingSource <RptgSrc>

**Presence:** [0..1]

**Definition:** Specifies the application used to generate the reporting.

**ReportingSource <RptgSrc>** contains one of the following elements (see ["ReportingSource1Choice" on page 251](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251

### 3.4.2.10 Account <Acct>

**Presence:** [1..1]

**Definition:** Unambiguous identification of the account to which credit and debit entries are made.

**Account <Acct>** contains the following elements (see ["CashAccount39" on page 115](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification </d>	[1..1]	±		115
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		116
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	116
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		116
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		116
	Owner <Ownr>	[0..1]	±		117
	Servicer <Svcr>	[0..1]	±		117

### 3.4.2.11 RelatedAccount <RltdAcct>

**Presence:** [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the parent account of the account for which the statement has been issued.

**RelatedAccount <RltdAcct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount38](#)" on page 117 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		118
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		118
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	118
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		119
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		119

### 3.4.2.12 Interest <Intrst>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides general interest information that applies to the account at a particular moment in time.

**Interest <Intrst>** contains the following **AccountInterest4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[0..1]			50
{Or}	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		51
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		51
	<b>Rate &lt;Rate&gt;</b>	[0..*]			51
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		51
	<b>ValidityRange &lt;VldtyRg&gt;</b>	[0..1]			52
	<b>Amount &lt;Amt&gt;</b>	[1..1]			52
{Or}	<b>FromAmount &lt;FrAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		53
Or	<b>ToAmount &lt;ToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		53
Or	<b>FromToAmount &lt;FrToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]			53
	<b>FromAmount &lt;FrAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		53
	<b>ToAmount &lt;ToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		54
Or	<b>EqualAmount &lt;EQAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount		54
Or}	<b>NotEqualAmount &lt;NEQAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount		54
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator &lt;CdtDbtInd&gt;</b>	[0..1]	CodeSet		54
	<b>Currency &lt;Ccy&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	54
	<b>FromToDate &lt;FrToDt&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		55
	<b>Reason &lt;Rsn&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		55
	<b>Tax &lt;Tax&gt;</b>	[0..1]			55
	<b>Identification &lt;Id&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		55
	<b>Rate &lt;Rate&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Rate		55
	<b>Amount &lt;Amt&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	55

### 3.4.2.12.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of interest.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **InterestType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		51
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		51

### 3.4.2.12.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of interest.

*Datatype:* "InterestType1Code" on page 359

CodeName	Name	Definition
INDY	IntraDay	During or within a business day.
OVRN	OverNight	Period of time between the end of a business day and the start of the next business day (usually the day after).

### 3.4.2.12.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of interest in uncoded form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 372

### 3.4.2.12.2 Rate <Rate>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to qualify the interest rate.

**Rate <Rate>** contains the following **Rate4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		51
	<b>ValidityRange &lt;VldtyRg&gt;</b>	[0..1]			52
	<b>Amount &lt;Amt&gt;</b>	[1..1]			52
{Or}	<b>FromAmount &lt;FrAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		53
Or	<b>ToAmount &lt;ToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		53
Or	<b>FromToAmount &lt;FrToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]			53
	<b>FromAmount &lt;FrAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		53
	<b>ToAmount &lt;ToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		54
Or	<b>EqualAmount &lt;EQAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount		54
Or}	<b>NotEqualAmount &lt;NEQAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount		54
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator &lt;CdtDbtInd&gt;</b>	[0..1]	CodeSet		54
	<b>Currency &lt;Ccy&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	54

### 3.4.2.12.2.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of interest rate.

Type **<Tp>** contains one of the following elements (see "RateType4Choice" on page 297 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Percentage <Pctg>	[1..1]	Rate		297
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]	Text		297

### 3.4.2.12.2.2 ValidityRange <VldtyRg>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: An amount range where the interest rate is applicable.

ValidityRange <VldtyRg> contains the following ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmountRange2 elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			52
{Or}	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		53
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		53
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			53
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		53
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		54
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		54
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		54
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		54
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	54

#### 3.4.2.12.2.2.1 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specified amount or amount range.

Amount <Amt> contains one of the following ImpliedCurrencyAmountRange1Choice elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		53
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		53
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			53
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		53
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		54
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		54
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		54

### 3.4.2.12.2.2.1.1 FromAmount <FrAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Lower boundary of a range of amount values.

**FromAmount <FrAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 138 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		138
	Included </Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		138

### 3.4.2.12.2.2.1.2 ToAmount <ToAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Upper boundary of a range of amount values.

**ToAmount <ToAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 138 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		138
	Included </Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		138

### 3.4.2.12.2.2.1.3 FromToAmount <FrToAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Range of valid amount values.

**FromToAmount <FrToAmt>** contains the following **FromToAmountRange1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>FromAmount &lt;FrAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		53
	<b>ToAmount &lt;ToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		54

### 3.4.2.12.2.2.1.3.1 FromAmount <FrAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Lower boundary of a range of amount values.

**FromAmount <FrAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 138 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		138
	Included </Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		138

### 3.4.2.12.2.2.1.3.2 ToAmount <ToAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Upper boundary of a range of amount values.

**ToAmount <ToAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 138 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount < <i>BdryAmt</i> >	[1..1]	Amount		138
	Included < <i>Incl</i> >	[1..1]	Indicator		138

### 3.4.2.12.2.2.1.4 EqualAmount <EQAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Exact value an amount must match to be considered valid.

*Datatype:* "[ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount](#)" on page 344

### 3.4.2.12.2.2.1.5 NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Value that an amount must not match to be considered valid.

*Datatype:* "[ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount](#)" on page 344

### 3.4.2.12.2.2.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the amount is a credited or debited amount.

*Datatype:* "[CreditDebitCode](#)" on page 350

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

### 3.4.2.12.2.2.3 Currency <Ccy>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Medium of exchange of value, used to qualify an amount.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#)

*Datatype:* "[ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode](#)" on page 345

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3)

contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### 3.4.2.12.3 FromToDate <FrToDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Range of time between a start date and an end date for the calculation of the interest.

**FromToDate <FrToDt>** contains the following elements (see "["DateTimePeriod1" on page 234](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDateTime < <i>FrDtTm</i> >	[1..1]	DateTime		234
	ToDateTime < <i>ToDtTm</i> >	[1..1]	DateTime		235

### 3.4.2.12.4 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the interest.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

### 3.4.2.12.5 Tax <Tax>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the tax applied to charges.

**Tax <Tax>** contains the following **TaxCharges2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Identification &lt;<i>Id</i>&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		55
	<b>Rate &lt;<i>Rate</i>&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Rate		55
	<b>Amount &lt;<i>Amt</i>&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	55

#### 3.4.2.12.5.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique reference to unambiguously identify the nature of the tax levied, such as Value Added Tax (VAT).

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 3.4.2.12.5.2 Rate <Rate>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Rate used to calculate the tax.

*Datatype:* ["PercentageRate" on page 370](#)

#### 3.4.2.12.5.3 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money resulting from the calculation of the tax.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344](#)

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### 3.4.2.13 Balance <Bal>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to define the balance as a numerical representation of the net increases and decreases in an account at a specific point in time.

*Impacted by:* [C12 "ForwardBalanceAndAvailabilityRule"](#)

Balance <Bal> contains the following **CashBalance8** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		56
	<b>CreditLine &lt;CdtLine&gt;</b>	[0..*]	±		57
	<b>Amount &lt;Amt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	57
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator &lt;CdtDbtInd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		58
	<b>Date &lt;Dt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		58
	<b>Availability &lt;Avlbtty&gt;</b>	[0..*]	±		58

#### Constraints

- **ForwardBalanceAndAvailabilityRule**

If Type is equal to ForwardAvailable, Availability is not allowed.

### 3.4.2.13.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the nature of a balance.

Type **<Tp>** contains the following elements (see "[BalanceType13](#)" on page 138 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			139
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		139
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		139
	SubType <SubTp>	[0..1]			139
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		139
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		139

### 3.4.2.13.2 CreditLine <CdtLine>

Presence: [0..\*]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide details on the credit line.

CreditLine <CdtLine> contains the following elements (see "[CreditLine3](#)" on page 139 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Included </Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		140
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			140
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		140
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		140
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	140
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	±		141

### 3.4.2.13.3 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money of the cash balance.

Impacted by: [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

Datatype: "[ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount](#)" on page 344

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### 3.4.2.13.4 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the balance is a credit or a debit balance.

*Usage:* A zero balance is considered to be a credit balance.

*Datatype:* "CreditDebitCode" on page 350

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

### 3.4.2.13.5 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates the date (and time) of the balance.

**Date <Dt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DateAndDateTime2Choice](#)" on page 234 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		234
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		234

### 3.4.2.13.6 Availability <Avlbtv>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to indicate when the booked amount of money will become available, that is can be accessed and starts generating interest.

*Usage:* This type of information is used in the US and is linked to particular instruments such as cheques.

*Example:* When a cheque is deposited, it will be booked on the deposit day, but the amount of money will only be accessible as of the indicated availability day (according to national banking regulations).

**Availability <Avlbtv>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAvailability1](#)" on page 187 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			187
{Or}	NumberOfDays <NbOfDays>	[1..1]	Text		187
Or}	ActualDate <ActlDt>	[1..1]	Date		187
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	188
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		188

### 3.4.2.14 TransactionsSummary <Txssummary>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides summary information on entries.

**TransactionsSummary <TxssSummary>** contains the following elements (see "[TotalTransactions6](#)" on page 264 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalEntries <TtlNtries>	[0..1]			264
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		265
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		265
	TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>	[0..1]	±		265
	TotalCreditEntries <TtlCdtNtries>	[0..1]	±		265
	TotalDebitEntries <TtlDbtNtries>	[0..1]	±		265
	TotalEntriesPerBankTransactionCode <TtlNtriesPerBkTxCd>	[0..*]			266
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		266
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		266
	TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>	[0..1]	±		266
	CreditEntries <CdtNtries>	[0..1]	±		267
	DebitEntries <DbtNtries>	[0..1]	±		267
	ForecastIndicator <FcstInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		267
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	267
	Availability <Avlbtv>	[0..*]	±		268
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	±		268

### 3.4.2.15 Entry <Ntry>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Specify an entry in the statement.

*Usage:* At least one reference must be provided to identify the entry and its underlying transaction(s).

*Usage Rule:* In case of a Payments R-transaction the creditor / debtor referenced of the original payment initiation messages is also used for reporting of the R-transaction. The original debtor/creditor in the reporting of R-Transactions is not inverted.

Following elements all defined in the TransactionDetails in RelatedParties or RelatedAgents are impacted by this usage rule:

Creditor, UltimateCreditor, CreditorAccount, CreditorAgent, Debtor, UltimateDebtor, DebtorAccount and DebtorAgent.

*Impacted by:* [C18 "ReferenceGuideline"](#)

Entry <Ntry> contains the following ReportEntry10 elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>EntryReference</b> <NtryRef>	[0..1]	Text		60
	<b>Amount</b> <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	61
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator</b> <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		61
	<b>ReversalIndicator</b> <RvslInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		61
	<b>Status</b> <Sts>	[1..1]	±		61
	<b>BookingDate</b> <BookgDt>	[0..1]	±		62
	<b>ValueDate</b> <ValDt>	[0..1]	±		62
	<b>AccountServicerReference</b> <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		62
	<b>Availability</b> <Avlbtty>	[0..*]	±		63
	<b>BankTransactionCode</b> <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	63
	<b>CommissionWaiverIndicator</b> <ComssnWvrInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		64
	<b>AdditionalInformationIndicator</b> <AddtlInflnd>	[0..1]			64
	<b>MessageNameIdentification</b> <MsgNmId>	[0..1]	Text		64
	<b>MessageIdIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		64
	<b>AmountDetails</b> <AmtDtls>	[0..1]	±		64
	<b>Charges</b> <Chrgs>	[0..1]	±		66
	<b>TechnicalInputChannel</b> <TechInptChnl>	[0..1]			66
{Or}	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		67
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		67
	<b>Interest</b> <Inrst>	[0..1]	±		67
	<b>CardTransaction</b> <CardTx>	[0..1]	±		68
	<b>EntryDetails</b> <NtryDtls>	[0..*]	±		70
	<b>AdditionalEntryInformation</b> <AddtlNtryInf>	[0..1]	Text		70

#### Constraints

- **ReferenceGuideline**

At least one reference should be present to identify the underlying transaction(s).

#### 3.4.2.15.1 EntryReference <NtryRef>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique reference for the entry.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 372

### 3.4.2.15.2 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money in the cash entry.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344](#)

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### 3.4.2.15.3 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the entry is a credit or a debit entry.

*Datatype:* ["CreditDebitCode" on page 350](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

### 3.4.2.15.4 ReversalIndicator <RvsInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether or not the entry is the result of a reversal.

*Usage:* This element should only be present if the entry is the result of a reversal.

If the CreditDebitIndicator is CRDT and ReversalIndicator is Yes, the original operation was a debit entry.

If the CreditDebitIndicator is DBIT and ReversalIndicator is Yes, the original operation was a credit entry.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see ["TrueFalseIndicator" on page 368](#)):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

### 3.4.2.15.5 Status <Sts>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Status of an entry on the books of the account servicer.

**Status <Sts>** contains one of the following elements (see "[EntryStatus1Choice](#)" on page 328 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		328
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		328

#### 3.4.2.15.6 BookingDate <BookgDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time when an entry is posted to an account on the account servicer's books.

*Usage:* Booking date is the expected booking date, unless the status is booked, in which case it is the actual booking date.

**BookingDate <BookgDt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DateAndDateTime2Choice](#)" on page 234 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		234
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		234

#### 3.4.2.15.7 ValueDate <ValDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which assets become available to the account owner in case of a credit entry, or cease to be available to the account owner in case of a debit entry.

*Usage:* If entry status is pending and value date is present, then the value date refers to an expected/requested value date.

For entries subject to availability/float and for which availability information is provided, the value date must not be used. In this case the availability component identifies the number of availability days.

**ValueDate <ValDt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DateAndDateTime2Choice](#)" on page 234 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		234
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		234

#### 3.4.2.15.8 AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique reference as assigned by the account servicing institution to unambiguously identify the entry.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

### 3.4.2.15.9 Availability <Avlbty>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Indicates when the booked amount of money will become available, that is can be accessed and starts generating interest.

*Usage:* This type of information is used in the US and is linked to particular instruments such as cheques.

*Example:* When a cheque is deposited, it will be booked on the deposit day, but the amount of money will only be accessible as of the indicated availability day (according to national banking regulations).

**Availability <Avlbty>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAvailability1](#)" on page 187 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			187
{Or}	NumberOfDays <NbOfDays>	[1..1]	Text		187
Or}	ActualDate <ActlDt>	[1..1]	Date		187
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	188
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		188

### 3.4.2.15.10 BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to fully identify the type of underlying transaction resulting in an entry.

*Impacted by:* [C10 "DomainOrProprietaryRule"](#), [C11 "FamilyAndSubFamilyRule"](#)

**BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>** contains the following elements (see "[BankTransactionCodeStructure4](#)" on page 141 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Domain <Domn>	[0..1]	±		142
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..1]			142
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	Text		142
	Issuer <ssr>	[0..1]	Text		142

#### Constraints

- **DomainOrProprietaryRule**

Either Proprietary or Domain or both must be present.

Following Must be True  
 /Domain Must be present  
 Or      /Proprietary Must be present

- **FamilyAndSubFamilyRule**

If a specific (non-generic) Family code is not present, then a specific (non-generic) SubFamily code is not allowed.

### 3.4.2.15.11 CommissionWaiverIndicator <ComssnWvrInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the transaction is exempt from commission.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "[YesNoIndicator](#)" on page 368):

- *Meaning When True:* Yes
- *Meaning When False:* No

### 3.4.2.15.12 AdditionalInformationIndicator <AddtlInflnd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the underlying transaction details are provided through a separate message, as in the case of aggregate bookings.

**AdditionalInformationIndicator <AddtlInflnd>** contains the following **MessageIdentification2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>MessageNameIdentification &lt;MsgNmId&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		64
	<b>MessageIdentification &lt;MsgId&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		64

#### 3.4.2.15.12.1 MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the message name identifier of the message that will be used to provide additional details.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

#### 3.4.2.15.12.2 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the identification of the message that will be used to provide additional details.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

### 3.4.2.15.13 AmountDetails <AmtDtls>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides information on the original amount.

*Usage:* This component (on entry level) should be used when a total original batch or aggregate amount has to be provided. If required, the individual original amounts can be included in the same component on transaction details level.

**AmountDetails <AmtDtls>** contains the following elements (see "AmountAndCurrencyExchange3" on page 121 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InstructedAmount <InstdAmt>	[0..1]			123
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	124
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			124
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	124
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	125
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	125
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		125
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		125
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		126
	TransactionAmount <TxAmt>	[0..1]			126
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	126
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			126
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	127
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	127
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	127
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		128
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		128
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		128
	CounterValueAmount <CntrValAmt>	[0..1]			128
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	129
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			129
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	130
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	130
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	130
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		131
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		131
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		131
	AnnouncedPostingAmount <AnncdPstngAmt>	[0..1]			131
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	132
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			132

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	133
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	133
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	133
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		134
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		134
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		134
	ProprietaryAmount <PrtryAmt>	[0..*]			134
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		135
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	135
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			135
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	136
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	136
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	136
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		137
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		137
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		137

### 3.4.2.15.14 Charges <Chrgs>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides information on the charges, pre-advised or included in the entry amount.

Usage: This component is used on entry level in case of batch or aggregate bookings.

Charges <Chrgs> contains the following elements (see "Charges6" on page 228 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalChargesAndTaxAmount <TtlChrgsAndTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	228
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]	±		228

### 3.4.2.15.15 TechnicalInputChannel <TechInptChnl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Channel used to technically input the instruction related to the entry.

**TechnicalInputChannel <TechInptChnl>** contains one of the following  
**TechnicalInputChannel1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		67
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		67

#### 3.4.2.15.15.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Technical input channel, as published in an external technical input channel code list.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalTechnicalInputChannel1Code" on page 358](#)

#### 3.4.2.15.15.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Technical channel used to input the instruction, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 3.4.2.15.16 Interest <Intrst>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details of the interest amount included in the entry amount.

*Usage:* This component is used on entry level in the case of batch or aggregate bookings.

**Interest <Intrst>** contains the following elements (see "[TransactionInterest4](#)" on page 254 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalInterestAndTaxAmount <TtlIntrstAndTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	255
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]			256
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	257
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		258
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			258
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		258
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		258
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]			259
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		259
	ValidityRange <VldtyRg>	[0..1]			259
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			260
{Or}	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		260
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		261
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			261
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		261
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		261
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		262
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		262
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		262
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	262
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		262
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		263
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]			263
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		263
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		263
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	263

### 3.4.2.15.17 CardTransaction <CardTx>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details of the card transaction included in the entry amount, when globalised by the account servicer.

**CardTransaction <CardTx>** contains the following elements (see "CardEntry4" on page 144 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Card <Card>	[0..1]			146
	PlainCardData <PlainCardData>	[0..1]			147
	PAN <PAN>	[1..1]	Text		148
	CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		148
	EffectiveDate <FctvDt>	[0..1]	YearMonth		148
	ExpiryDate <XpryDt>	[1..1]	YearMonth		148
	ServiceCode <SvcCd>	[0..1]	Text		148
	TrackData <TrckData>	[0..*]			149
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		149
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		149
	CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>	[0..1]			149
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		149
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		150
	CardCountryCode <CardCtryCd>	[0..1]	Text		150
	CardBrand <CardBrnd>	[0..1]	±		150
	AdditionalCardData <AddtlCardData>	[0..1]	Text		150
	POI <POI>	[0..1]			150
	Identification </d>	[1..1]	±		151
	SystemName <SysNm>	[0..1]	Text		152
	GroupIdentification <Grpld>	[0..1]	Text		152
	Capabilities <Cpbilities>	[0..1]			152
	CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpbilities>	[0..*]	CodeSet		152
	CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrdhldrVrfctnCpbilities>	[0..*]	CodeSet		153
	OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpbilities>	[0..1]	CodeSet		153
	DisplayCapabilities <DispCpbilities>	[0..*]			154
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		154
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		154
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		154
	PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>	[0..1]	Text		154
	Component <Cmpnt>	[0..*]			154

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	POICOMPONENTTYPE <POICmpntTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		155
	ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrlId>	[0..1]	Text		155
	Model <Mdl>	[0..1]	Text		155
	VersionNumber <VrsnNb>	[0..1]	Text		155
	SerialNumber <SrlNb>	[0..1]	Text		156
	ApprovalNumber <ApprvlNb>	[0..*]	Text		156
	AggregatedEntry <AggtdNtry>	[0..1]			156
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		156
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		157
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>	[0..1]	Text		157
	SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>	[0..1]			157
	FirstTransaction <FrstTx>	[0..1]	Text		157
	LastTransaction <LastTx>	[0..1]	Text		157
	TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>	[0..1]	±		158
	PrePaidAccount <PrePdAcct>	[0..1]	±		158

### 3.4.2.15.18 EntryDetails <NtryDtls>

Presence: [0..\*]

Definition: Provides details on the entry.

EntryDetails <NtryDtls> contains the following elements (see "EntryDetails9" on page 223 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Batch <Btch>	[0..1]			223
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		223
	PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInfld>	[0..1]	Text		223
	NumberOfTransactions <NbOfTxns>	[0..1]	Text		224
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	224
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		224
	TransactionDetails <TxDtls>	[0..*]	±		224

### 3.4.2.15.19 AdditionalEntryInformation <AddtlNtryInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Further details of the entry.

Datatype: "Max500Text" on page 373

### 3.4.2.16 AdditionalStatementInformation <AddtlStmtInfr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Further details of the account statement.

*Datatype:* "Max500Text" on page 373

## 3.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* C21 "SupplementaryDataRule"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "[SupplementaryData1](#)" on page 279 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		279
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		279

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 4 camt.054.001.08

# BankToCustomerDebitCreditNotificationV08

### 4.1 MessageDefinition Functionality

#### Scope

The BankToCustomerDebitCreditNotification message is sent by the account servicer to an account owner or to a party authorised by the account owner to receive the message. It can be used to inform the account owner, or authorised party, of single or multiple debit and/or credit entries reported to the account.

#### Usage

The BankToCustomerDebitCreditNotification message can contain reports for more than one account. It provides information for cash management and/or reconciliation.

The BankToCustomerDebitCreditNotification message can be used to:

- report pending and booked items;
- notify one or more debit entries;
- notify one or more credit entries;
- notify a combination of debit and credit entries.

It can include underlying details of transactions that have been included in the entry.

It is possible that the receiver of the message is not the account owner, but a party entitled by the account owner to receive the account information (also known as recipient).

It does not contain balance information.

#### Outline

The BankToCustomerDebitCreditNotificationV08 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. GroupHeader

Common information for the message.

B. Notification

Notifies debit and credit entries for the account.

C. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

## 4.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <BkToCstmrDbtCdtNtfctn>	[1..1]		C15, C19	
	<b>GroupHeader</b> <GrpHdr>	[1..1]	±		77
	<b>Notification</b> <Ntfctn>	[1..*]			77
	<b>Identification</b> <Id>	[1..1]	Text		79
	<b>NotificationPagination</b> <NtfctnPgntn>	[0..1]	±		80
	<b>ElectronicSequenceNumber</b> <ElctrncSeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		80
	<b>ReportingSequence</b> <RptgSeq>	[0..1]	±		80
	<b>LegalSequenceNumber</b> <LglSeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		80
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		81
	<b>FromToDate</b> <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		81
	<b>CopyDuplicateIndicator</b> <CpyDplctInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		81
	<b>ReportingSource</b> <RptgSrc>	[0..1]	±		81
	<b>Account</b> <Acct>	[1..1]	±		82
	<b>RelatedAccount</b> <RltdAcct>	[0..1]	±		82
	<b>Interest</b> <Intrst>	[0..*]			82
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]			83
{Or}	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		84
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		84
	<b>Rate</b> <Rate>	[0..*]			84
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]	±		84
	<b>ValidityRange</b> <VldtyRg>	[0..1]			85
	<b>Amount</b> <Amt>	[1..1]			85
{Or}	<b>FromAmount</b> <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		86
Or	<b>ToAmount</b> <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		86
Or	<b>FromToAmount</b> <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			86
	<b>FromAmount</b> <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		86
	<b>ToAmount</b> <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		87
Or	<b>EqualAmount</b> <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		87
Or}	<b>NotEqualAmount</b> <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		87

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator</b> <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		87
	<b>Currency</b> <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	87
	<b>FromToDate</b> <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		88
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		88
	<b>Tax</b> <Tax>	[0..1]			88
	<b>Identification</b> <Id>	[0..1]	Text		88
	<b>Rate</b> <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		88
	<b>Amount</b> <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	88
	<b>TransactionsSummary</b> <TxssSummry>	[0..1]	±		89
	<b>Entry</b> <Ntry>	[0..*]		C17	90
	<b>EntryReference</b> <NtryRef>	[0..1]	Text		91
	<b>Amount</b> <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	92
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator</b> <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		92
	<b>ReversalIndicator</b> <RvslInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		92
	<b>Status</b> <Sts>	[1..1]	±		92
	<b>BookingDate</b> <BookgDt>	[0..1]	±		93
	<b>ValueDate</b> <ValDt>	[0..1]	±		93
	<b>AccountServicerReference</b> <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		93
	<b>Availability</b> <Avlbtty>	[0..*]	±		94
	<b>BankTransactionCode</b> <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	94
	<b>CommissionWaiverIndicator</b> <ComssnWvrInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		95
	<b>AdditionalInformationIndicator</b> <AddtlInflnd>	[0..1]			95
	<b>MessageNameIdentification</b> <MsgNmld>	[0..1]	Text		95
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		95
	<b>AmountDetails</b> <AmtDtls>	[0..1]	±		95
	<b>Charges</b> <Chrgs>	[0..1]	±		97
	<b>TechnicalInputChannel</b> <TechInptChnl>	[0..1]			97
{Or}	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		98
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		98
	<b>Interest</b> <Intrst>	[0..1]	±		98
	<b>CardTransaction</b> <CardTx>	[0..1]	±		99

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>EntryDetails</b> <NtryDtls>	[0..*]	±		101
	<b>AdditionalEntryInformation</b> <AddtlNtryInf>	[0..1]	Text		101
	<b>AdditionalNotificationInformation</b> <AddtlNtfctnInf>	[0..1]	Text		102
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C20	102

## 4.3 Constraints

### C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C3 AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C4 BICFI

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C5 Country

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

### C6 CurrencyAmount

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### C7 CurrencyAmount

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### C8 DescriptionPresenceRule

If Description is not present then either ISIN or at least one occurrence of OtherIdentification must be present.

**C9 DescriptionUsageRule**

Description must be used alone as the last resort.

**C10 DomainOrProprietaryRule**

Either Proprietary or Domain or both must be present.

**C11 FamilyAndSubFamilyRule**

If a specific (non-generic) Family code is not present, then a specific (non-generic) SubFamily code is not allowed.

**C12 IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

**C13 ISINGuideline**

When an ISIN code exists, it is strongly recommended that the ISIN be used.

**C14 ISINPresenceRule**

If ISIN is not present then either Description or at least one occurrence of OtherIdentification must be present.

**C15 MessageOrNotificationPaginationRule**

MessagePagination may be present or NotificationPagination may be present, but not both.

Following Must be True  
 /GroupHeader/MessagePagination Must be absent  
 Or      /Notification[\*]/NotificationPagination Must be absent

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

**C16 OtherIdentificationPresenceRule**

If OtherIdentification is not present then either ISIN or Description must be present.

**C17 ReferenceGuideline**

At least one reference should be present to identify the underlying transaction(s).

**C18 ReturnReasonRule**

If Reason/Code is equal to NARR, then AdditionalInformation must be present.

**C19 SupplementaryDataRule**

The SupplementaryData building block at message level must not be used to provide additional information about a transaction. The SupplementaryData element at transaction level should be used for that purpose.

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

**C20 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 4.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

## 4.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Common information for the message.

**GroupHeader <GrpHdr>** contains the following elements (see "[GroupHeader81](#)" on page 269 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		269
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		269
	MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>	[0..1]	±		269
	MessagePagination <MsgPgntn>	[0..1]	±		270
	OriginalBusinessQuery <OrgnlBizQry>	[0..1]	±		270
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInfr>	[0..1]	Text		270

## 4.4.2 Notification <Ntfctn>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Notifies debit and credit entries for the account.

**Notification <Ntfctn>** contains the following **AccountNotification17** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Identification &lt;/d&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		79
	<b>NotificationPagination &lt;NtfctnPgtn&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		80
	<b>ElectronicSequenceNumber &lt;ElctrncSeqNb&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Quantity		80
	<b>ReportingSequence &lt;RptgSeq&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		80
	<b>LegalSequenceNumber &lt;Lg/SeqNb&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Quantity		80
	<b>CreationDateTime &lt;CreDtTm&gt;</b>	[0..1]	DateTime		81
	<b>FromToDate &lt;FrToDt&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		81
	<b>CopyDuplicateIndicator &lt;CpyDplctInd&gt;</b>	[0..1]	CodeSet		81
	<b>ReportingSource &lt;RptgSrc&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		81
	<b>Account &lt;Acct&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		82
	<b>RelatedAccount &lt;RltdAcct&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		82
	<b>Interest &lt;Intrst&gt;</b>	[0..*]			82
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[0..1]			83
{Or}	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		84
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		84
	<b>Rate &lt;Rate&gt;</b>	[0..*]			84
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		84
	<b>ValidityRange &lt;VldtyRg&gt;</b>	[0..1]			85
	<b>Amount &lt;Amt&gt;</b>	[1..1]			85
{Or}	<b>FromAmount &lt;FrAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		86
Or	<b>ToAmount &lt;ToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		86
Or	<b>FromToAmount &lt;FrToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]			86
	<b>FromAmount &lt;FrAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		86
	<b>ToAmount &lt;ToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		87
Or	<b>EqualAmount &lt;EQAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount		87
Or}	<b>NotEqualAmount &lt;NEQAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount		87
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator &lt;CdtDbtInd&gt;</b>	[0..1]	CodeSet		87
	<b>Currency &lt;Ccy&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	87
	<b>FromToDate &lt;FrToDt&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		88
	<b>Reason &lt;Rsn&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		88
	<b>Tax &lt;Tax&gt;</b>	[0..1]			88

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Identification &lt;Id&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		88
	<b>Rate &lt;Rate&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Rate		88
	<b>Amount &lt;Amt&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	88
	<b>TransactionsSummary &lt;Txssummary&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		89
	<b>Entry &lt;Ntry&gt;</b>	[0..*]		C17	90
	<b>EntryReference &lt;NtryRef&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		91
	<b>Amount &lt;Amt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	92
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator &lt;CdtDbtInd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		92
	<b>ReversalIndicator &lt;RvslInd&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Indicator		92
	<b>Status &lt;Sts&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		92
	<b>BookingDate &lt;BookgDt&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		93
	<b>ValueDate &lt;ValDt&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		93
	<b>AccountServiceReference &lt;AcctSvcrRef&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		93
	<b>Availability &lt;Avlbtty&gt;</b>	[0..*]	±		94
	<b>BankTransactionCode &lt;BkTxCd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	94
	<b>CommissionWaiverIndicator &lt;ComssnWvrInd&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Indicator		95
	<b>AdditionalInformationIndicator &lt;AddtlInflnd&gt;</b>	[0..1]			95
	<b>MessageNameIdentification &lt;MsgNmld&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		95
	<b>MessageIdentification &lt;MsgId&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		95
	<b>AmountDetails &lt;AmtDtls&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		95
	<b>Charges &lt;Chrgs&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		97
	<b>TechnicalInputChannel &lt;TechInptChnl&gt;</b>	[0..1]			97
{Or}	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		98
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		98
	<b>Interest &lt;Intrst&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		98
	<b>CardTransaction &lt;CardTx&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		99
	<b>EntryDetails &lt;NtryDtls&gt;</b>	[0..*]	±		101
	<b>AdditionalEntryInformation &lt;AddtlNtryInf&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		101
	<b>AdditionalNotificationInformation &lt;AddtlNtfctnInf&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		102

#### 4.4.2.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

**Definition:** Unique identification, as assigned by the account servicer, to unambiguously identify the account notification.

**Datatype:** ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 4.4.2.2 NotificationPagination <NtfctnPgntn>

**Presence:** [0..1]

**Definition:** Provides details on the page number of the notification.

**Usage:** The pagination of the notification is only allowed when agreed between the parties.

**NotificationPagination <NtfctnPgntn>** contains the following elements (see ["Pagination1" on page 271](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PageNumber <PgNb>	[1..1]	Text		272
	LastPageIndicator <LastPgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		272

#### 4.4.2.3 ElectronicSequenceNumber <ElctrncSeqNb>

**Presence:** [0..1]

**Definition:** Sequential number of the notification, as assigned by the account servicer.

**Usage:** The sequential number is increased incrementally for each notification sent electronically.

**Datatype:** ["Number" on page 369](#)

#### 4.4.2.4 ReportingSequence <RptgSeq>

**Presence:** [0..1]

**Definition:** Specifies the range of identification sequence numbers, as provided in the request.

**ReportingSequence <RptgSeq>** contains one of the following elements (see ["SequenceRange1Choice" on page 251](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	FromSequence <FrSeq>	[1..1]	Text		252
Or	ToSequence <ToSeq>	[1..1]	Text		252
Or	FromToSequence <FrToSeq>	[1..*]			252
	FromSequence <FrSeq>	[1..1]	Text		252
	ToSequence <ToSeq>	[1..1]	Text		252
Or	EqualSequence <EQSeq>	[1..*]	Text		253
Or}	NotEqualSequence <NEQSeq>	[1..*]	Text		253

#### 4.4.2.5 LegalSequenceNumber <LglSeqNb>

**Presence:** [0..1]

**Definition:** Legal sequential number of the notification, as assigned by the account servicer. It is increased incrementally for each notification sent.

**Datatype:** ["Number" on page 369](#)

#### 4.4.2.6 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

**Presence:** [0..1]

**Definition:** Date and time at which the notification was created.

**Datatype:** ["ISODATETIME" on page 366](#)

#### 4.4.2.7 FromToDate <FrToDt>

**Presence:** [0..1]

**Definition:** Range of time between a start date and an end date for which the account notification is issued.

**FromToDate <FrToDt>** contains the following elements (see ["DateTimePeriod1" on page 234](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDateTime <FrDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		234
	ToDateTime <ToDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		235

#### 4.4.2.8 CopyDuplicateIndicator <CopyDplctInd>

**Presence:** [0..1]

**Definition:** Indicates whether the document is a copy, a duplicate, or a duplicate of a copy.

**Datatype:** ["CopyDuplicate1Code" on page 349](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
CODU	CopyDuplicate	Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes and the message is a duplicate of a message previously sent.
COPY	Copy	Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes.
DUPL	Duplicate	Message is for information/confirmation purposes. It is a duplicate of a message previously sent.

#### 4.4.2.9 ReportingSource <RptgSrc>

**Presence:** [0..1]

**Definition:** Specifies the application used to generate the reporting.

**ReportingSource <RptgSrc>** contains one of the following elements (see "[ReportingSource1Choice](#)" on page [251](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251

#### 4.4.2.10 Account <Acct>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account to which credit and debit entries are made.

**Account <Acct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount39](#)" on page [115](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		115
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		116
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	116
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		116
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		116
	Owner <Ownr>	[0..1]	±		117
	Servicer <Svcr>	[0..1]	±		117

#### 4.4.2.11 RelatedAccount <RltdAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the parent account of the account for which the notification has been issued.

**RelatedAccount <RltdAcct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount38](#)" on page [117](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		118
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		118
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	118
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		119
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		119

#### 4.4.2.12 Interest <Intrst>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides general interest information that applies to the account at a particular moment in time.

**Interest <Intrst>** contains the following **AccountInterest4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[0..1]			83
{Or}	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		84
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		84
	<b>Rate &lt;Rate&gt;</b>	[0..*]			84
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		84
	<b>ValidityRange &lt;VldtyRg&gt;</b>	[0..1]			85
	<b>Amount &lt;Amt&gt;</b>	[1..1]			85
{Or}	<b>FromAmount &lt;FrAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		86
Or	<b>ToAmount &lt;ToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		86
Or	<b>FromToAmount &lt;FrToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]			86
	<b>FromAmount &lt;FrAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		86
	<b>ToAmount &lt;ToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		87
Or	<b>EqualAmount &lt;EQAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount		87
Or}	<b>NotEqualAmount &lt;NEQAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount		87
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator &lt;CdtDbtInd&gt;</b>	[0..1]	CodeSet		87
	<b>Currency &lt;Ccy&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	87
	<b>FromToDate &lt;FrToDt&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		88
	<b>Reason &lt;Rsn&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		88
	<b>Tax &lt;Tax&gt;</b>	[0..1]			88
	<b>Identification &lt;Id&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		88
	<b>Rate &lt;Rate&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Rate		88
	<b>Amount &lt;Amt&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	88

#### 4.4.2.12.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of interest.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **InterestType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		84
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		84

#### 4.4.2.12.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of interest.

*Datatype:* "InterestType1Code" on page 359

CodeName	Name	Definition
INDY	IntraDay	During or within a business day.
OVRN	OverNight	Period of time between the end of a business day and the start of the next business day (usually the day after).

#### 4.4.2.12.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of interest in uncoded form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 372

#### 4.4.2.12.2 Rate <Rate>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to qualify the interest rate.

**Rate <Rate>** contains the following **Rate4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		84
	<b>ValidityRange &lt;VldtyRg&gt;</b>	[0..1]			85
	<b>Amount &lt;Amt&gt;</b>	[1..1]			85
{Or}	<b>FromAmount &lt;FrAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		86
Or	<b>ToAmount &lt;ToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		86
Or	<b>FromToAmount &lt;FrToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]			86
	<b>FromAmount &lt;FrAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		86
	<b>ToAmount &lt;ToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		87
Or	<b>EqualAmount &lt;EQAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount		87
Or}	<b>NotEqualAmount &lt;NEQAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount		87
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator &lt;CdtDbtInd&gt;</b>	[0..1]	CodeSet		87
	<b>Currency &lt;Ccy&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	87

#### 4.4.2.12.2.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of interest rate.

Type **<Tp>** contains one of the following elements (see "RateType4Choice" on page 297 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Percentage <Pctg>	[1..1]	Rate		297
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]	Text		297

#### 4.4.2.12.2.2 ValidityRange <VldtyRg>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: An amount range where the interest rate is applicable.

ValidityRange <VldtyRg> contains the following ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmountRange2 elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Amount &lt;Amt&gt;</b>	[1..1]			85
{Or	<b>FromAmount &lt;FrAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		86
Or	<b>ToAmount &lt;ToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		86
Or	<b>FromToAmount &lt;FrToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]			86
	<b>FromAmount &lt;FrAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		86
	<b>ToAmount &lt;ToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		87
Or	<b>EqualAmount &lt;EQAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount		87
Or}	<b>NotEqualAmount &lt;NEQAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount		87
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator &lt;CdtDbtInd&gt;</b>	[0..1]	CodeSet		87
	<b>Currency &lt;Ccy&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	87

#### 4.4.2.12.2.2.1 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specified amount or amount range.

Amount <Amt> contains one of the following ImpliedCurrencyAmountRange1Choice elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>FromAmount &lt;FrAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		86
Or	<b>ToAmount &lt;ToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		86
Or	<b>FromToAmount &lt;FrToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]			86
	<b>FromAmount &lt;FrAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		86
	<b>ToAmount &lt;ToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		87
Or	<b>EqualAmount &lt;EQAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount		87
Or}	<b>NotEqualAmount &lt;NEQAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount		87

**4.4.2.12.2.2.1.1 FromAmount <FrAmt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Lower boundary of a range of amount values.**FromAmount <FrAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 138 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount < <i>BdryAmt</i> >	[1..1]	Amount		138
	Included < <i>Incl</i> >	[1..1]	Indicator		138

**4.4.2.12.2.2.1.2 ToAmount <ToAmt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Upper boundary of a range of amount values.**ToAmount <ToAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 138 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount < <i>BdryAmt</i> >	[1..1]	Amount		138
	Included < <i>Incl</i> >	[1..1]	Indicator		138

**4.4.2.12.2.2.1.3 FromToAmount <FrToAmt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Range of valid amount values.**FromToAmount <FrToAmt>** contains the following **FromToAmountRange1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>FromAmount &lt;FrAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		86
	<b>ToAmount &lt;ToAmt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		87

**4.4.2.12.2.2.1.3.1 FromAmount <FrAmt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Lower boundary of a range of amount values.**FromAmount <FrAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 138 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount < <i>BdryAmt</i> >	[1..1]	Amount		138
	Included < <i>Incl</i> >	[1..1]	Indicator		138

#### 4.4.2.12.2.2.1.3.2 ToAmount <ToAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Upper boundary of a range of amount values.

**ToAmount <ToAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 138 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount < <i>BdryAmt</i> >	[1..1]	Amount		138
	Included < <i>Incl</i> >	[1..1]	Indicator		138

#### 4.4.2.12.2.2.1.4 EqualAmount <EQAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Exact value an amount must match to be considered valid.

*Datatype:* "[ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount](#)" on page 344

#### 4.4.2.12.2.2.1.5 NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Value that an amount must not match to be considered valid.

*Datatype:* "[ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount](#)" on page 344

#### 4.4.2.12.2.2.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the amount is a credited or debited amount.

*Datatype:* "[CreditDebitCode](#)" on page 350

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

#### 4.4.2.12.2.2.3 Currency <Ccy>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Medium of exchange of value, used to qualify an amount.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#)

*Datatype:* "[ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode](#)" on page 345

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3)

contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 4.4.2.12.3 FromToDate <FrToDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Range of time between a start date and an end date for the calculation of the interest.

**FromToDate <FrToDt>** contains the following elements (see "["DateTimePeriod1" on page 234](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDateTime < <i>FrDtTm</i> >	[1..1]	DateTime		234
	ToDateTime < <i>ToDtTm</i> >	[1..1]	DateTime		235

#### 4.4.2.12.4 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the interest.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 4.4.2.12.5 Tax <Tax>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the tax applied to charges.

**Tax <Tax>** contains the following **TaxCharges2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Identification &lt;<i>Id</i>&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		88
	<b>Rate &lt;<i>Rate</i>&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Rate		88
	<b>Amount &lt;<i>Amt</i>&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	88

##### 4.4.2.12.5.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique reference to unambiguously identify the nature of the tax levied, such as Value Added Tax (VAT).

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

##### 4.4.2.12.5.2 Rate <Rate>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Rate used to calculate the tax.

*Datatype:* ["PercentageRate" on page 370](#)

##### 4.4.2.12.5.3 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money resulting from the calculation of the tax.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344](#)

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 4.4.2.13 TransactionsSummary <TxssSummry>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides summary information on entries.

**TransactionsSummary <TxSummry>** contains the following elements (see "[TotalTransactions6](#)" on page 264 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalEntries <TtlNtries>	[0..1]			264
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		265
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		265
	TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>	[0..1]	±		265
	TotalCreditEntries <TtlCdtNtries>	[0..1]	±		265
	TotalDebitEntries <TtlDbtNtries>	[0..1]	±		265
	TotalEntriesPerBankTransactionCode <TtlNtriesPerBkTxCd>	[0..*]			266
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		266
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		266
	TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>	[0..1]	±		266
	CreditEntries <CdtNtries>	[0..1]	±		267
	DebitEntries <DbtNtries>	[0..1]	±		267
	ForecastIndicator <FcstInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		267
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	267
	Availability <Avlbtty>	[0..*]	±		268
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	±		268

#### 4.4.2.14 Entry <Ntry>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies an entry in the debit credit notification.

*Usage:* At least one reference must be provided to identify the entry and its underlying transaction(s).

*Usage Rule:* In case of a Payments R-transaction the creditor / debtor referenced of the original payment initiation messages is also used for reporting of the R-transaction. The original debtor/creditor in the reporting of R-Transactions is not inverted.

Following elements all defined in the TransactionDetails in RelatedParties or RelatedAgents are impacted by this usage rule:

Creditor, UltimateCreditor, CreditorAccount, CreditorAgent, Debtor, UltimateDebtor, DebtorAccount and DebtorAgent.

*Impacted by:* [C17 "ReferenceGuideline"](#)

Entry <Ntry> contains the following ReportEntry10 elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>EntryReference</b> <NtryRef>	[0..1]	Text		91
	<b>Amount</b> <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	92
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator</b> <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		92
	<b>ReversalIndicator</b> <RvslInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		92
	<b>Status</b> <Sts>	[1..1]	±		92
	<b>BookingDate</b> <BookgDt>	[0..1]	±		93
	<b>ValueDate</b> <ValDt>	[0..1]	±		93
	<b>AccountServicerReference</b> <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		93
	<b>Availability</b> <Avlbtty>	[0..*]	±		94
	<b>BankTransactionCode</b> <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	94
	<b>CommissionWaiverIndicator</b> <ComssnWvrInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		95
	<b>AdditionalInformationIndicator</b> <AddtlInflnd>	[0..1]			95
	<b>MessageNameIdentification</b> <MsgNmId>	[0..1]	Text		95
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		95
	<b>AmountDetails</b> <AmtDtls>	[0..1]	±		95
	<b>Charges</b> <Chrgs>	[0..1]	±		97
	<b>TechnicalInputChannel</b> <TechInptChnl>	[0..1]			97
{Or}	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		98
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		98
	<b>Interest</b> <Intrst>	[0..1]	±		98
	<b>CardTransaction</b> <CardTx>	[0..1]	±		99
	<b>EntryDetails</b> <NtryDtls>	[0..*]	±		101
	<b>AdditionalEntryInformation</b> <AddtlNtryInf>	[0..1]	Text		101

#### Constraints

- **ReferenceGuideline**

At least one reference should be present to identify the underlying transaction(s).

#### 4.4.2.14.1 EntryReference <NtryRef>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique reference for the entry.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 372

#### 4.4.2.14.2 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money in the cash entry.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344](#)

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 4.4.2.14.3 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the entry is a credit or a debit entry.

*Datatype:* ["CreditDebitCode" on page 350](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

#### 4.4.2.14.4 ReversalIndicator <RvsInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether or not the entry is the result of a reversal.

*Usage:* This element should only be present if the entry is the result of a reversal.

If the CreditDebitIndicator is CRDT and ReversalIndicator is Yes, the original operation was a debit entry.

If the CreditDebitIndicator is DBIT and ReversalIndicator is Yes, the original operation was a credit entry.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see ["TrueFalseIndicator" on page 368](#)):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 4.4.2.14.5 Status <Sts>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Status of an entry on the books of the account servicer.

**Status <Sts>** contains one of the following elements (see "[EntryStatus1Choice](#)" on page 328 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		328
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		328

#### 4.4.2.14.6 BookingDate <BookgDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time when an entry is posted to an account on the account servicer's books.

*Usage:* Booking date is the expected booking date, unless the status is booked, in which case it is the actual booking date.

**BookingDate <BookgDt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DateAndDateTime2Choice](#)" on page 234 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		234
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		234

#### 4.4.2.14.7 ValueDate <ValDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which assets become available to the account owner in case of a credit entry, or cease to be available to the account owner in case of a debit entry.

*Usage:* If entry status is pending and value date is present, then the value date refers to an expected/requested value date.

For entries subject to availability/float and for which availability information is provided, the value date must not be used. In this case the availability component identifies the number of availability days.

**ValueDate <ValDt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DateAndDateTime2Choice](#)" on page 234 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		234
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		234

#### 4.4.2.14.8 AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique reference as assigned by the account servicing institution to unambiguously identify the entry.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

#### 4.4.2.14.9 Availability <Avlbty>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Indicates when the booked amount of money will become available, that is can be accessed and starts generating interest.

*Usage:* This type of information is used in the US and is linked to particular instruments such as cheques.

*Example:* When a cheque is deposited, it will be booked on the deposit day, but the amount of money will only be accessible as of the indicated availability day (according to national banking regulations).

**Availability <Avlbty>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAvailability1](#)" on page 187 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			187
{Or}	NumberOfDays <NbOfDays>	[1..1]	Text		187
Or}	ActualDate <ActlDt>	[1..1]	Date		187
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	188
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		188

#### 4.4.2.14.10 BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to fully identify the type of underlying transaction resulting in an entry.

*Impacted by:* [C10 "DomainOrProprietaryRule"](#), [C11 "FamilyAndSubFamilyRule"](#)

**BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>** contains the following elements (see "[BankTransactionCodeStructure4](#)" on page 141 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Domain <Domn>	[0..1]	±		142
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..1]			142
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	Text		142
	Issuer <ssr>	[0..1]	Text		142

#### Constraints

- **DomainOrProprietaryRule**

Either Proprietary or Domain or both must be present.

Following Must be True  
 /Domain Must be present  
 Or      /Proprietary Must be present

- **FamilyAndSubFamilyRule**

If a specific (non-generic) Family code is not present, then a specific (non-generic) SubFamily code is not allowed.

#### 4.4.2.14.11 CommissionWaiverIndicator <ComssnWvrInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the transaction is exempt from commission.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "[YesNoIndicator](#)" on page 368):

- *Meaning When True:* Yes
- *Meaning When False:* No

#### 4.4.2.14.12 AdditionalInformationIndicator <AddtlInflnd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the underlying transaction details are provided through a separate message, as in the case of aggregate bookings.

**AdditionalInformationIndicator <AddtlInflnd>** contains the following **MessageIdentification2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>MessageNameIdentification &lt;MsgNmId&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		95
	<b>MessageIdentification &lt;MsgId&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		95

##### 4.4.2.14.12.1 MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the message name identifier of the message that will be used to provide additional details.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

##### 4.4.2.14.12.2 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the identification of the message that will be used to provide additional details.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

#### 4.4.2.14.13 AmountDetails <AmtDtls>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides information on the original amount.

*Usage:* This component (on entry level) should be used when a total original batch or aggregate amount has to be provided. If required, the individual original amounts can be included in the same component on transaction details level.

**AmountDetails <AmtDtls>** contains the following elements (see "AmountAndCurrencyExchange3" on page 121 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InstructedAmount <InstdAmt>	[0..1]			123
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	124
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			124
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	124
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	125
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	125
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		125
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		125
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		126
	TransactionAmount <TxAmt>	[0..1]			126
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	126
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			126
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	127
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	127
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	127
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		128
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		128
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		128
	CounterValueAmount <CntrValAmt>	[0..1]			128
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	129
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			129
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	130
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	130
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	130
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		131
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		131
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		131
	AnnouncedPostingAmount <AnncdPstngAmt>	[0..1]			131
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	132
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			132

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	133
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	133
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	133
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		134
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		134
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		134
	ProprietaryAmount <PrtryAmt>	[0..*]			134
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		135
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	135
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			135
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	136
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	136
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	136
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		137
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		137
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		137

#### 4.4.2.14.14 Charges <Chrgs>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides information on the charges, pre-advised or included in the entry amount.

Usage: This component is used on entry level in case of batch or aggregate bookings.

Charges <Chrgs> contains the following elements (see "[Charges6](#)" on page 228 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalChargesAndTaxAmount <TtlChrgsAndTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	228
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]	±		228

#### 4.4.2.14.15 TechnicalInputChannel <TechInptChnl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Channel used to technically input the instruction related to the entry.

**TechnicalInputChannel <TechInptChnl>** contains one of the following  
**TechnicalInputChannel1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		98
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		98

#### 4.4.2.14.15.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Technical input channel, as published in an external technical input channel code list.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalTechnicalInputChannel1Code" on page 358](#)

#### 4.4.2.14.15.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Technical channel used to input the instruction, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 4.4.2.14.16 Interest <Intrst>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details of the interest amount included in the entry amount.

*Usage:* This component is used on entry level in the case of batch or aggregate bookings.

**Interest <Intrst>** contains the following elements (see "[TransactionInterest4](#)" on page 254 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalInterestAndTaxAmount <TtlIntrstAndTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	255
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]			256
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	257
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		258
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			258
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		258
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		258
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]			259
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		259
	ValidityRange <VldtyRg>	[0..1]			259
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			260
{Or}	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		260
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		261
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			261
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		261
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		261
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		262
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		262
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		262
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	262
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		262
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		263
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]			263
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		263
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		263
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	263

#### 4.4.2.14.17 CardTransaction <CardTx>

**Presence:** [0..1]

**Definition:** Provides details of the card transaction included in the entry amount, when globalised by the account servicer.

**CardTransaction <CardTx>** contains the following elements (see "CardEntry4" on page 144 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Card <Card>	[0..1]			146
	PlainCardData <PlainCardData>	[0..1]			147
	PAN <PAN>	[1..1]	Text		148
	CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		148
	EffectiveDate <FctvDt>	[0..1]	YearMonth		148
	ExpiryDate <XpryDt>	[1..1]	YearMonth		148
	ServiceCode <SvcCd>	[0..1]	Text		148
	TrackData <TrckData>	[0..*]			149
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		149
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		149
	CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>	[0..1]			149
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		149
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		150
	CardCountryCode <CardCtryCd>	[0..1]	Text		150
	CardBrand <CardBrnd>	[0..1]	±		150
	AdditionalCardData <AddtlCardData>	[0..1]	Text		150
	POI <POI>	[0..1]			150
	Identification </d>	[1..1]	±		151
	SystemName <SysNm>	[0..1]	Text		152
	GroupIdentification <Grpld>	[0..1]	Text		152
	Capabilities <Cpbilities>	[0..1]			152
	CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpbilities>	[0..*]	CodeSet		152
	CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrdhldrVrfctnCpbilities>	[0..*]	CodeSet		153
	OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpbilities>	[0..1]	CodeSet		153
	DisplayCapabilities <DispCpbilities>	[0..*]			154
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		154
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		154
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		154
	PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>	[0..1]	Text		154
	Component <Cmpnt>	[0..*]			154

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	POIComponentType <POICmpntTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		155
	ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrlId>	[0..1]	Text		155
	Model <Mdl>	[0..1]	Text		155
	VersionNumber <VrsnNb>	[0..1]	Text		155
	SerialNumber <SrlNb>	[0..1]	Text		156
	ApprovalNumber <ApprvlNb>	[0..*]	Text		156
	AggregatedEntry <AggtdNtry>	[0..1]			156
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		156
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		157
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>	[0..1]	Text		157
	SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>	[0..1]			157
	FirstTransaction <FrstTx>	[0..1]	Text		157
	LastTransaction <LastTx>	[0..1]	Text		157
	TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>	[0..1]	±		158
	PrePaidAccount <PrePdAcct>	[0..1]	±		158

#### 4.4.2.14.18 EntryDetails <NtryDtls>

Presence: [0..\*]

Definition: Provides details on the entry.

EntryDetails <NtryDtls> contains the following elements (see "EntryDetails9" on page 223 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Batch <Btch>	[0..1]			223
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		223
	PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInfld>	[0..1]	Text		223
	NumberOfTransactions <NbOfTxns>	[0..1]	Text		224
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	224
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		224
	TransactionDetails <TxDtls>	[0..*]	±		224

#### 4.4.2.14.19 AdditionalEntryInformation <AddtlNtryInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Further details of the entry.

Datatype: "Max500Text" on page 373

#### 4.4.2.15 AdditionalNotificationInformation <AddtlNtfctnInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Further details of the account notification.

*Datatype:* "Max500Text" on page 373

### 4.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* C20 "SupplementaryDataRule"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "[SupplementaryData1](#)" on page 279 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		279
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		279

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 5 **camt.060.001.05**

# **AccountReportingRequestV05**

### **5.1 MessageDefinition Functionality**

#### Scope

The AccountReportingRequest message is sent by the account owner, either directly or through a forwarding agent, to one of its account servicing institutions. It is used to ask the account servicing institution to send a report on the account owner's account in a BankToCustomerAccountReport (camt.052), a BankToCustomerStatement (camt.053) or a BankToCustomerDebitCreditNotification (camt.054).

#### Outline

The AccountReportingRequestV05 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. GroupHeader

Set of elements used to provide further details on the message.

B. ReportingRequest

Set of elements used to provide further details on the reporting request.

C. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

## 5.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<i>Message root &lt;Document&gt; &lt;AcctRptgReq&gt;</i>	[1..1]			
	<b>GroupHeader &lt;GrpHdr&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		105
	<b>ReportingRequest &lt;RptgReq&gt;</b>	[1..*]			105
	<b>Identification &lt;Id&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		106
	<b>RequestedMessageNameIdentification &lt;ReqdMsgNmId&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		106
	<b>Account &lt;Acct&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		106
	<b>AccountOwner &lt;AcctOwnr&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		107
	<b>AccountServicer &lt;AcctSvcr&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		107
	<b>ReportingPeriod &lt;RptgPrd&gt;</b>	[0..1]			107
	<b>FromToDate &lt;FrToDt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		108
	<b>FromToTime &lt;FrToTm&gt;</b>	[0..1]			108
	<b>FromTime &lt;FrTm&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Time		108
	<b>ToTime &lt;ToTm&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Time		108
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		108
	<b>ReportingSequence &lt;RptgSeq&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		109
	<b>RequestedTransactionType &lt;ReqdTxTp&gt;</b>	[0..1]			109
	<b>Status &lt;Sts&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		110
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator &lt;CdtDbtInd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		110
	<b>FloorLimit &lt;FlrLmt&gt;</b>	[0..*]			110
	<b>Amount &lt;Amt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	110
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator &lt;CdtDbtInd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		111
	<b>RequestedBalanceType &lt;ReqdBalTp&gt;</b>	[0..*]	±		111
	<b>SupplementaryData &lt;SplmtryData&gt;</b>	[0..*]	±	C7	111

## 5.3 Constraints

### C1 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

**C2 AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C3 BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C4 Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

**C5 CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**C6 IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

**C7 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 5.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 5.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide further details on the message.

**GroupHeader <GrpHdr>** contains the following elements (see "[GroupHeader77](#)" on page 271 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		271
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		271
	MessageSender <MsgSndr>	[0..1]	±		271

### 5.4.2 ReportingRequest <RptgReq>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide further details on the reporting request.

**ReportingRequest <RptgReq>** contains the following **ReportingRequest5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Identification &lt;/Id&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		106
	<b>RequestedMessageNameIdentification &lt;ReqdMsgNmId&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		106
	<b>Account &lt;Acct&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		106
	<b>AccountOwner &lt;AcctOwnr&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		107
	<b>AccountServicer &lt;AcctSvcr&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		107
	<b>ReportingPeriod &lt;RptgPrd&gt;</b>	[0..1]			107
	<b>FromToDate &lt;FrToDt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		108
	<b>FromToTime &lt;FrToTm&gt;</b>	[0..1]			108
	<b>FromTime &lt;FrTm&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Time		108
	<b>ToTime &lt;ToTm&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Time		108
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		108
	<b>ReportingSequence &lt;RptgSeq&gt;</b>	[0..1]	±		109
	<b>RequestedTransactionType &lt;ReqdTxTp&gt;</b>	[0..1]			109
	<b>Status &lt;Sts&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		110
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator &lt;CdtDbtInd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		110
	<b>FloorLimit &lt;FlrLmt&gt;</b>	[0..*]			110
	<b>Amount &lt;Amt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	110
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator &lt;CdtDbtInd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		111
	<b>RequestedBalanceType &lt;ReqdBalTp&gt;</b>	[0..*]	±		111

#### 5.4.2.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the account owner, to unambiguously identify the account reporting request.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 5.4.2.2 RequestedMessageNameIdentification <ReqdMsgNmId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of the requested reporting message.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 5.4.2.3 Account <Acct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account to which the reporting request refers.

**Account <Acct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount38](#)" on page 117 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		118
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		118
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	118
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		119
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		119

#### 5.4.2.4 AccountOwner <AcctOwnr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Party that legally owns the account.

**AccountOwner <AcctOwnr>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party40Choice](#)" on page 285 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		286
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		286

#### 5.4.2.5 AccountServicer <AcctSvcr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that manages the account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

**AccountServicer <AcctSvcr>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 242 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		242
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		243

#### 5.4.2.6 ReportingPeriod <RptgPrd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the requested reporting period.

**ReportingPeriod <RptgPrd>** contains the following **ReportingPeriod2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>FromToDate &lt;FrToDt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		108
	<b>FromToTime &lt;FrToTm&gt;</b>	[0..1]			108
	<b>FromTime &lt;FrTm&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Time		108
	<b>ToTime &lt;ToTm&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Time		108
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		108

#### 5.4.2.6.1 FromToDate <FrToDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies a date range.

**FromToDate <FrToDt>** contains the following elements (see "[DatePeriodDetails1](#)" on page 233 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		233
	ToDate <ToDt>	[0..1]	Date		233

#### 5.4.2.6.2 FromToTime <FrToTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies a time range.

**FromToTime <FrToTm>** contains the following **TimePeriodDetails1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>FromTime &lt;FrTm&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Time		108
	<b>ToTime &lt;ToTm&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Time		108

##### 5.4.2.6.2.1 FromTime <FrTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Time at which the time span starts.

*Datatype:* "[ISOTime](#)" on page 374

##### 5.4.2.6.2.2 ToTime <ToTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Time at which the time span ends.

*Datatype:* "[ISOTime](#)" on page 374

#### 5.4.2.6.3 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

**Definition:** Specifies whether all matching items need to be reported or only those items that are new or have changed since the last similar request was made.

**Datatype:** ["QueryType3Code" on page 362](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
ALLL	All	Specifies that the query requests that all matching items be returned.
CHNG	Changed	Specifies that the query requests that only new matching items since the last similar query be returned.
MODF	Modified	Specifies that the query requests that only items that have changed since the last query be returned.

#### 5.4.2.7 ReportingSequence <RptgSeq>

**Presence:** [0..1]

**Definition:** Specifies the range of identification sequence numbers which are being requested.

**ReportingSequence <RptgSeq>** contains one of the following elements (see "[SequenceRange1Choice" on page 251](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	FromSequence <FrSeq>	[1..1]	Text		252
Or	ToSequence <ToSeq>	[1..1]	Text		252
Or	FromToSequence <FrToSeq>	[1..*]			252
	FromSequence <FrSeq>	[1..1]	Text		252
	ToSequence <ToSeq>	[1..1]	Text		252
Or	EqualSequence <EQSeq>	[1..*]	Text		253
Or}	NotEqualSequence <NEQSeq>	[1..*]	Text		253

#### 5.4.2.8 RequestedTransactionType <ReqdTxTp>

**Presence:** [0..1]

**Definition:** Identifies the transactions to be reported.

**RequestedTransactionType <ReqdTxTp>** contains the following **TransactionType2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Status &lt;Sts&gt;</b>	[1..1]	±		110
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator &lt;CdtDbtInd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		110
	<b>FloorLimit &lt;FlrLmt&gt;</b>	[0..*]			110
	<b>Amount &lt;Amt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	110
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator &lt;CdtDbtInd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		111

### 5.4.2.8.1 Status <Sts>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the status on the books of the account servicer of the transactions to be reported.

**Status <Sts>** contains one of the following elements (see "[EntryStatus1Choice](#)" on page 328 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		328
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		328

### 5.4.2.8.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the reporting request refers to credit or debit entries.

*Datatype:* "[CreditDebitCode](#)" on page 350

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

### 5.4.2.8.3 FloorLimit <FlrLmt>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies the minimum value of entries to be reported in the requested message.

**FloorLimit <FlrLmt>** contains the following **Limit2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	110
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		111

#### 5.4.2.8.3.1 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Minimum transaction amount to be reported in the requested message.

*Impacted by:* [C1 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C5 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* "[ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount](#)" on page 344

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3)

contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 5.4.2.8.3.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the floor limit applies to credit, to debit or to both credit and debit entries.

*Datatype:* "FloorLimitType1Code" on page 358

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRED	Credit	Floor limit applies to credit entries.
DEBT	Debit	Floor limit applies to debit entries.
BOTH	Both	Floor limit applies to both credit and debit entries.

#### 5.4.2.9 RequestedBalanceType <ReqdBalTp>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides details on the requested balance reporting.

**RequestedBalanceType <ReqdBalTp>** contains the following elements (see "[BalanceType13](#)" on page 138 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			139
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		139
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		139
	SubType <SubTp>	[0..1]			139
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		139
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		139

#### 5.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* C7 "SupplementaryDataRule"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "[SupplementaryData1](#)" on page 279 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		279
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		279

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

# 6 Message Items Types

## 6.1 MessageComponents

### 6.1.1 Account

#### 6.1.1.1 CashAccountType2Choice

*Definition:* Nature or use of the account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		113
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		113

##### 6.1.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Account type, in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalCashAccountType1Code" on page 353

##### 6.1.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Nature or use of the account in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 372

##### 6.1.1.2 GenericAccountIdentification1

*Definition:* Information related to a generic account identification.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		113
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			114
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		114
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		114

##### 6.1.1.2.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification assigned by an institution.

*Datatype:* "Max34Text" on page 372

### 6.1.1.2.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme.

**SchemeName <SchmeNm>** contains one of the following **AccountSchemeName1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		114

#### 6.1.1.2.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalAccountIdentification1Code" on page 351

#### 6.1.1.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 372

#### 6.1.1.2.3 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 372

### 6.1.1.3 ProxyAccountIdentification1

*Definition:* Information related to a proxy identification of the account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			114
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		115
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		115
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		115

#### 6.1.1.3.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Type of the proxy identification.

Type **<Tp>** contains one of the following **ProxyAccountType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		115
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		115

#### 6.1.1.3.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalProxyAccountType1Code" on page 357](#)

#### 6.1.1.3.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.1.3.2 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification used to indicate the account identification under another specified name.

*Datatype:* ["Max2048Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.1.4 CashAccount39

*Definition:* Provides the details to identify an account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		115
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		116
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	116
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		116
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		116
	Owner <Ownr>	[0..1]	±		117
	Servicer <Svcr>	[0..1]	±		117

#### 6.1.1.4.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification for the account between the account owner and the account servicer.

**Identification <Id>** contains one of the following elements (see "["AccountIdentification4Choice"](#)" on page 120 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	IBAN <IBAN>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet	C13	120
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]	±		120

#### 6.1.1.4.2 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the nature, or use of the account.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following elements (see "["CashAccountType2Choice"](#)" on page 113 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		113
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		113

#### 6.1.1.4.3 Currency <Ccy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the currency in which the account is held.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode"](#) on page 345

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 6.1.1.4.4 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the account, as assigned by the account servicing institution, in agreement with the account owner in order to provide an additional means of identification of the account.

*Usage:* The account name is different from the account owner name. The account name is used in certain user communities to provide a means of identifying the account, in addition to the account owner's identity and the account number.

*Datatype:* ["Max70Text"](#) on page 373

#### 6.1.1.4.5 Proxy <Prxy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies an alternate assumed name for the identification of the account.

**Proxy <Prxy>** contains the following elements (see "[ProxyAccountIdentification1](#)" on page 114 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			114
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		115
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		115
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		115

#### 6.1.1.4.6 Owner <Ownr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that legally owns the account.

**Owner <Ownr>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification135](#)" on page 282 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		282
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		282
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		283
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	283
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		284

#### 6.1.1.4.7 Servicer <Svcr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that manages the account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

**Servicer <Svcr>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 242 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		242
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		243

#### 6.1.1.5 CashAccount38

*Definition:* Provides the details to identify an account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		118
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		118
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	118
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		119
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		119

#### 6.1.1.5.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification for the account between the account owner and the account servicer.

**Identification <Id>** contains one of the following elements (see "[AccountIdentification4Choice](#)" on page 120 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	IBAN <IBAN>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet	C13	120
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]	±		120

#### 6.1.1.5.2 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the nature, or use of the account.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following elements (see "[CashAccountType2Choice](#)" on page 113 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		113
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		113

#### 6.1.1.5.3 Currency <Ccy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the currency in which the account is held.

Usage: Currency should only be used in case one and the same account number covers several currencies

and the initiating party needs to identify which currency needs to be used for settlement on the account.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

Datatype: "[ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode](#)" on page 345

### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 6.1.1.5.4 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the account, as assigned by the account servicing institution, in agreement with the account owner in order to provide an additional means of identification of the account.

*Usage:* The account name is different from the account owner name. The account name is used in certain user communities to provide a means of identifying the account, in addition to the account owner's identity and the account number.

*Datatype:* ["Max70Text" on page 373](#)

#### 6.1.1.5.5 Proxy <Prxy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies an alternate assumed name for the identification of the account.

**Proxy <Prxy>** contains the following elements (see ["ProxyAccountIdentification1" on page 114](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			114
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		115
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		115
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		115

#### 6.1.1.6 SecuritiesAccount19

*Definition:* Account to or from which a securities entry is made.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		119
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		120
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		120

##### 6.1.1.6.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification for the account between the account owner and the account servicer.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

### 6.1.1.6.2 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of securities account.

**Type <Tp>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 248 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification </d>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer </ssr>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	Text		248

### 6.1.1.6.3 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Description of the account.

*Datatype:* "[Max70Text](#)" on page 373

## 6.1.2 Account Identification

### 6.1.2.1 AccountIdentification4Choice

*Definition:* Specifies the unique identification of an account as assigned by the account servicer.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	IBAN </IBAN>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet	C13	120
Or}	Other </Othr>	[1..1]	±		120

### 6.1.2.1.1 IBAN <IBAN>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* International Bank Account Number (IBAN) - identifier used internationally by financial institutions to uniquely identify the account of a customer. Further specifications of the format and content of the IBAN can be found in the standard ISO 13616 "Banking and related financial services - International Bank Account Number (IBAN)" version 1997-10-01, or later revisions.

*Impacted by:* [C13 "IBAN"](#)

*Datatype:* "[IBAN2007Identifier](#)" on page 367

#### Constraints

- **IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

### 6.1.2.1.2 Other <Othr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

**Definition:** Unique identification of an account, as assigned by the account servicer, using an identification scheme.

**Other <Othr>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericAccountIdentification1](#)" on page 113 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification </d>	[1..1]	Text		113
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			114
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		114
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		114

## 6.1.3 Amount

### 6.1.3.1 AmountAndCurrencyExchange3

**Definition:** Set of elements used to provide information on the original amount.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InstructedAmount <InstdAmt>	[0..1]			123
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	124
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			124
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	124
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	125
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	125
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		125
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		125
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		126
	TransactionAmount <TxAmt>	[0..1]			126
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	126
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			126
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	127
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	127
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	127
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		128
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		128
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		128
	CounterValueAmount <CntrValAmt>	[0..1]			128
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	129
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			129
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	130
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	130
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	130
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		131
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		131
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		131
	AnnouncedPostingAmount <AnncdPstngAmt>	[0..1]			131
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	132
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			132
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	133

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TargetCurrency < <i>TrgtCcy</i> >	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	133
	UnitCurrency < <i>UnitCcy</i> >	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	133
	ExchangeRate < <i>XchgRate</i> >	[1..1]	Rate		134
	ContractIdentification < <i>CtrctId</i> >	[0..1]	Text		134
	QuotationDate < <i>QtnDt</i> >	[0..1]	DateTime		134
	ProprietaryAmount < <i>PrtryAmt</i> >	[0..*]			134
	Type < <i>Tp</i> >	[1..1]	Text		135
	Amount < <i>Amt</i> >	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	135
	CurrencyExchange < <i>CcyXchg</i> >	[0..1]			135
	SourceCurrency < <i>SrcCcy</i> >	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	136
	TargetCurrency < <i>TrgtCcy</i> >	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	136
	UnitCurrency < <i>UnitCcy</i> >	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	136
	ExchangeRate < <i>XchgRate</i> >	[1..1]	Rate		137
	ContractIdentification < <i>CtrctId</i> >	[0..1]	Text		137
	QuotationDate < <i>QtnDt</i> >	[0..1]	DateTime		137

#### 6.1.3.1.1 InstructedAmount <*InstdAmt*>

Presence: [0..1]

**Definition:** Identifies the amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency as ordered by the initiating party and provides currency exchange information in case the instructed amount and/or currency is/are different from the entry amount and/or currency.

**InstructedAmount <*InstdAmt*>** contains the following **AmountAndCurrencyExchangeDetails3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount < <i>Amt</i> >	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	124
	CurrencyExchange < <i>CcyXchg</i> >	[0..1]			124
	SourceCurrency < <i>SrcCcy</i> >	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	124
	TargetCurrency < <i>TrgtCcy</i> >	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	125
	UnitCurrency < <i>UnitCcy</i> >	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	125
	ExchangeRate < <i>XchgRate</i> >	[1..1]	Rate		125
	ContractIdentification < <i>CtrctId</i> >	[0..1]	Text		125
	QuotationDate < <i>QtnDt</i> >	[0..1]	DateTime		126

### 6.1.3.1.1.1 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency as ordered by the initiating party.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### 6.1.3.1.1.2 CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the currency exchange.

**CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>** contains the following **CurrencyExchange5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	124
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	125
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	125
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		125
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		125
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		126

### 6.1.3.1.1.2.1 SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Currency from which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 345

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3)

contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 6.1.3.1.1.2.2 TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Currency into which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 345

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 6.1.3.1.1.2.3 UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Currency in which the rate of exchange is expressed in a currency exchange. In the example 1GBP = xxxCUR, the unit currency is GBP.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 345

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 6.1.3.1.1.2.4 ExchangeRate <XchgRate>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Factor used to convert an amount from one currency into another. This reflects the price at which one currency was bought with another currency.

*Usage:* ExchangeRate expresses the ratio between UnitCurrency and QuotedCurrency (ExchangeRate = UnitCurrency/QuotedCurrency).

*Datatype:* "BaseOneRate" on page 369

#### 6.1.3.1.1.2.5 ContractIdentification <CtrctId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification to unambiguously identify the foreign exchange contract.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 372

### 6.1.3.1.1.2.6 QuotationDate <QtnDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which an exchange rate is quoted.

*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 366

### 6.1.3.1.2 TransactionAmount <TxAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of the underlying transaction.

**TransactionAmount <TxAmt>** contains the following **AmountAndCurrencyExchangeDetails3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	126
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			126
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	127
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	127
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	127
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		128
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		128
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		128

#### 6.1.3.1.2.1 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency as ordered by the initiating party.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.3.1.2.2 CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the currency exchange.

**CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>** contains the following **CurrencyExchange5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	127
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	127
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	127
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		128
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		128
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		128

#### 6.1.3.1.2.2.1 SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Currency from which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 345

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 6.1.3.1.2.2.2 TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Currency into which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 345

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 6.1.3.1.2.2.3 UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Currency in which the rate of exchange is expressed in a currency exchange. In the example 1GBP = xxxCUR, the unit currency is GBP.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 345](#)

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 6.1.3.1.2.2.4 ExchangeRate <XchgRate>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Factor used to convert an amount from one currency into another. This reflects the price at which one currency was bought with another currency.

*Usage:* ExchangeRate expresses the ratio between UnitCurrency and QuotedCurrency (ExchangeRate = UnitCurrency/QuotedCurrency).

*Datatype:* ["BaseOneRate" on page 369](#)

#### 6.1.3.1.2.2.5 ContractIdentification <CtrctId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification to unambiguously identify the foreign exchange contract.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.3.1.2.2.6 QuotationDate <QtnDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which an exchange rate is quoted.

*Datatype:* ["ISODateTime" on page 366](#)

#### 6.1.3.1.3 CounterValueAmount <CntrValAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide the countervalue amount and currency exchange information.

*Usage:* This can be either the counter amount quoted in an FX deal, or the result of the currency information applied to an instructed amount, before deduction of charges.

**CounterValueAmount <CntrValAmt>** contains the following  
**AmountAndCurrencyExchangeDetails3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	129
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			129
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	130
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	130
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	130
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		131
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		131
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		131

#### 6.1.3.1.3.1 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency as ordered by the initiating party.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount"](#) on page 344

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.3.1.3.2 CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the currency exchange.

**CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>** contains the following **CurrencyExchange5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	130
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	130
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	130
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		131
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		131
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		131

#### 6.1.3.1.3.2.1 SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Currency from which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 345](#)

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 6.1.3.1.3.2.2 TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Currency into which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 345](#)

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 6.1.3.1.3.2.3 UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Currency in which the rate of exchange is expressed in a currency exchange. In the example 1GBP = xxxCUR, the unit currency is GBP.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 345](#)

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

**6.1.3.1.3.2.4 ExchangeRate <XchgRate>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Factor used to convert an amount from one currency into another. This reflects the price at which one currency was bought with another currency.

*Usage:* ExchangeRate expresses the ratio between UnitCurrency and QuotedCurrency (ExchangeRate = UnitCurrency/QuotedCurrency).

*Datatype:* ["BaseOneRate" on page 369](#)

**6.1.3.1.3.2.5 ContractIdentification <CtrctId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification to unambiguously identify the foreign exchange contract.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

**6.1.3.1.3.2.6 QuotationDate <QtnDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which an exchange rate is quoted.

*Datatype:* ["ISODateTime" on page 366](#)

**6.1.3.1.4 AnnouncedPostingAmount <AnncdPstngAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money, based on terms of corporate action event and balance of underlying securities, entitled to/from the account owner.

In some situations, this amount may alternatively be called entitled amount.

**AnnouncedPostingAmount <AnncdPstngAmt>** contains the following  
**AmountAndCurrencyExchangeDetails3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	132
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			132
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	133
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	133
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	133
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		134
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		134
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		134

#### 6.1.3.1.4.1 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency as ordered by the initiating party.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount"](#) on page 344

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.3.1.4.2 CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the currency exchange.

**CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>** contains the following **CurrencyExchange5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	133
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	133
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	133
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		134
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		134
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		134

#### 6.1.3.1.4.2.1 SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Currency from which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 345

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 6.1.3.1.4.2.2 TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Currency into which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 345

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 6.1.3.1.4.2.3 UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Currency in which the rate of exchange is expressed in a currency exchange. In the example 1GBP = xxxCUR, the unit currency is GBP.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 345

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

**6.1.3.1.4.2.4 ExchangeRate <XchgRate>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Factor used to convert an amount from one currency into another. This reflects the price at which one currency was bought with another currency.

*Usage:* ExchangeRate expresses the ratio between UnitCurrency and QuotedCurrency (ExchangeRate = UnitCurrency/QuotedCurrency).

*Datatype:* ["BaseOneRate" on page 369](#)

**6.1.3.1.4.2.5 ContractIdentification <CtrctId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification to unambiguously identify the foreign exchange contract.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

**6.1.3.1.4.2.6 QuotationDate <QtnDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which an exchange rate is quoted.

*Datatype:* ["ISODateTime" on page 366](#)

**6.1.3.1.5 ProprietaryAmount <PrtryAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide information on the original amount and currency exchange.

**ProprietaryAmount <PrtryAmt>** contains the following **AmountAndCurrencyExchangeDetails4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		135
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	135
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			135
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	136
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	136
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	136
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		137
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		137
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		137

#### 6.1.3.1.5.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of amount.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.3.1.5.2 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money to be exchanged against another amount of money in the counter currency.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344](#)

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.3.1.5.3 CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the currency exchange.

**CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>** contains the following **CurrencyExchange5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	136
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	136
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	136
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		137
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		137
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		137

#### 6.1.3.1.5.3.1 SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Currency from which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 345](#)

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 6.1.3.1.5.3.2 TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Currency into which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 345](#)

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 6.1.3.1.5.3.3 UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Currency in which the rate of exchange is expressed in a currency exchange. In the example 1GBP = xxxCUR, the unit currency is GBP.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 345](#)

### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 6.1.3.1.5.3.4 ExchangeRate <XchgRate>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Factor used to convert an amount from one currency into another. This reflects the price at which one currency was bought with another currency.

*Usage:* ExchangeRate expresses the ratio between UnitCurrency and QuotedCurrency (ExchangeRate = UnitCurrency/QuotedCurrency).

*Datatype:* ["BaseOneRate" on page 369](#)

#### 6.1.3.1.5.3.5 ContractIdentification <CtrctId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification to unambiguously identify the foreign exchange contract.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.3.1.5.3.6 QuotationDate <QtnDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which an exchange rate is quoted.

*Datatype:* ["ISODateTime" on page 366](#)

### 6.1.3.2 AmountAndDirection35

*Definition:* Resulting debit or credit amount of the netted amounts for all debit and credit entries.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Quantity		137
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		137

#### 6.1.3.2.1 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Resulting amount of the netted amounts for all debit and credit entries.

*Datatype:* ["NonNegativeDecimalNumber" on page 369](#)

#### 6.1.3.2.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the amount is a credit or a debit amount.

*Datatype:* ["CreditDebitCode" on page 350](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

## 6.1.4 Amount Range

### 6.1.4.1 AmountRangeBoundary1

*Definition:* Limit for an amount range.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		138
	Included <Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		138

#### 6.1.4.1.1 BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount value of the range limit.

*Datatype:* ["ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344](#)

#### 6.1.4.1.2 Included <Incl>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the boundary amount is included in the range of amount values.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see ["YesNoIndicator" on page 368](#)):

- *Meaning When True:* Yes
- *Meaning When False:* No

## 6.1.5 Balance

### 6.1.5.1 BalanceType13

*Definition:* Set of elements used to define the balance type and sub-type.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			139
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		139
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		139
	SubType <SubTp>	[0..1]			139
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		139
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		139

### 6.1.5.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Coded or proprietary format balance type.

**CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>** contains one of the following **BalanceType10Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		139
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		139

#### 6.1.5.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance type, in a coded format.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalBalanceType1Code" on page 352](#)

#### 6.1.5.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance type, in a proprietary format.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.5.1.2 SubType <SubTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the balance sub-type.

**SubType <SubTp>** contains one of the following **BalanceSubType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		139
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		139

#### 6.1.5.1.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance sub-type, as published in an external balance sub-type code list.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalBalanceSubType1Code" on page 352](#)

#### 6.1.5.1.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies a proprietary code for the balance type.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

### 6.1.5.2 CreditLine3

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details of the credit line.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Included <Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		140
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			140
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		140
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		140
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	140
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	±		141

#### 6.1.5.2.1 Included <Incl>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether or not the credit line is included in the balance.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "[TrueFalseIndicator](#)" on page 368):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 6.1.5.2.2 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Type of the credit line provided when multiple credit lines may be provided.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **CreditLineType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		140
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		140

##### 6.1.5.2.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of the credit line, as published in an external purpose code list.

*Datatype:* "[ExternalCreditLineType1Code](#)" on page 354

##### 6.1.5.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of the credit line, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

#### 6.1.5.2.3 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money of the credit line.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.5.2.4 Date <Dt>

Presence: [0..1]

*Definition:* Date of the credit line provided when multiple credit lines may be provided.

**Date <Dt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DateAndDateTime2Choice](#)" on page 234 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		234
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		234

## 6.1.6 Bank Transaction Code

### 6.1.6.1 BankTransactionCodeStructure4

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify the type or operations code of a transaction entry.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Domain <Domn>	[0..1]	±		142
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..1]			142
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	Text		142
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		142

#### Constraints

- **DomainOrProprietaryRule**

Either Proprietary or Domain or both must be present.

Following Must be True  
 /Domain Must be present  
 Or      /Proprietary Must be present

- **FamilyAndSubFamilyRule**

If a specific (non-generic) Family code is not present, then a specific (non-generic) SubFamily code is not allowed.

#### 6.1.6.1.1 Domain <Domn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide the domain, the family and the sub-family of the bank transaction code, in a structured and hierarchical format.

*Usage:* If a specific family or sub-family code cannot be provided, the generic family code defined for the domain or the generic sub-family code defined for the family should be provided.

**Domain <Domn>** contains the following elements (see "[BankTransactionCodeStructure5](#)" on page 143 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		143
	Family <Fmly>	[1..1]	±		143

#### 6.1.6.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Bank transaction code in a proprietary form, as defined by the issuer.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following **ProprietaryBankTransactionCodeStructure1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	Text		142
	Issuer <lssr>	[0..1]	Text		142

#### 6.1.6.1.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary bank transaction code to identify the underlying transaction.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

#### 6.1.6.1.2.2 Issuer <lssr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the issuer of the proprietary bank transaction code.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

### 6.1.6.2 BankTransactionCodeStructure6

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify the type or operations code of a transaction entry.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		143
	SubFamilyCode <SubFmlyCd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		143

#### 6.1.6.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the family within a domain.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalBankTransactionFamily1Code" on page 352](#)

#### 6.1.6.2.2 SubFamilyCode <SubFmlyCd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the sub-product family within a specific family.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalBankTransactionSubFamily1Code" on page 353](#)

### 6.1.6.3 BankTransactionCodeStructure5

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify the type or operations code of a transaction entry.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		143
	Family <Fmly>	[1..1]	±		143

#### 6.1.6.3.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the business area of the underlying transaction.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalBankTransactionDomain1Code" on page 352](#)

#### 6.1.6.3.2 Family <Fmly>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the family and the sub-family of the bank transaction code, within a specific domain, in a structured and hierarchical format.

**Family <Fmly>** contains the following elements (see ["BankTransactionCodeStructure6" on page 142](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		143
	SubFamilyCode <SubFmlyCd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		143

## 6.1.7 Card Transaction

### 6.1.7.1 CardEntry4

*Definition:* Card transaction entry.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Card <Card>	[0..1]			146
	PlainCardData <PlainCardData>	[0..1]			147
	PAN <PAN>	[1..1]	Text		148
	CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		148
	EffectiveDate <FctvDt>	[0..1]	YearMonth		148
	ExpiryDate <XpryDt>	[1..1]	YearMonth		148
	ServiceCode <SvcCd>	[0..1]	Text		148
	TrackData <TrckData>	[0..*]			149
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		149
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		149
	CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>	[0..1]			149
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		149
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		150
	CardCountryCode <CardCtryCd>	[0..1]	Text		150
	CardBrand <CardBrnd>	[0..1]	±		150
	AdditionalCardData <AddtlCardData>	[0..1]	Text		150
	POI <POI>	[0..1]			150
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		151
	SystemName <SysNm>	[0..1]	Text		152
	GroupIdentification <Grpld>	[0..1]	Text		152
	Capabilities <Cpbilities>	[0..1]			152
	CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpbilities>	[0..*]	CodeSet		152
	CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrdhldrVrfctnCpbilities>	[0..*]	CodeSet		153
	OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpbilities>	[0..1]	CodeSet		153
	DisplayCapabilities <DispCpbilities>	[0..*]			154
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		154
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		154
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		154
	PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>	[0..1]	Text		154
	Component <Cmpnt>	[0..*]			154
	POICOMPONENTTYPE <POICmpntTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		155

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrlId>	[0..1]	Text		155
	Model <Mdl>	[0..1]	Text		155
	VersionNumber <VrsnNb>	[0..1]	Text		155
	SerialNumber <SrlNb>	[0..1]	Text		156
	ApprovalNumber <ApprvlNb>	[0..*]	Text		156
	AggregatedEntry <AggtdNtry>	[0..1]			156
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		156
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		157
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>	[0..1]	Text		157
	SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>	[0..1]			157
	FirstTransaction <FrstTx>	[0..1]	Text		157
	LastTransaction <LastTx>	[0..1]	Text		157
	TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>	[0..1]	±		158
	PrePaidAccount <PrePdAcct>	[0..1]	±		158

#### 6.1.7.1.1 Card <Card>

Presence: [0..1]

**Definition:** Electronic money product that provides the cardholder with a portable and specialised computer device, which typically contains a microprocessor.

**Card <Card>** contains the following **PaymentCard4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlainCardData <PlainCardData>	[0..1]			147
	PAN <PAN>	[1..1]	Text		148
	CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		148
	EffectiveDate <FctvDt>	[0..1]	YearMonth		148
	ExpiryDate <XpryDt>	[1..1]	YearMonth		148
	ServiceCode <SvcCd>	[0..1]	Text		148
	TrackData <TrckData>	[0..*]			149
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		149
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		149
	CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>	[0..1]			149
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		149
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		150
	CardCountryCode <CardCtryCd>	[0..1]	Text		150
	CardBrand <CardBrnd>	[0..1]	±		150
	AdditionalCardData <AddtlCardData>	[0..1]	Text		150

#### 6.1.7.1.1.1 PlainCardData <PlainCardData>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Sensitive data associated with the card performing the transaction.

**PlainCardData <PlainCardData>** contains the following **PlainCardData1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PAN <PAN>	[1..1]	Text		148
	CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		148
	EffectiveDate <FctvDt>	[0..1]	YearMonth		148
	ExpiryDate <XpryDt>	[1..1]	YearMonth		148
	ServiceCode <SvcCd>	[0..1]	Text		148
	TrackData <TrckData>	[0..*]			149
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		149
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		149
	CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>	[0..1]			149
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		149
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		150

#### 6.1.7.1.1.1.1 PAN <PAN>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Primary Account Number (PAN) of the card, or card number.

*Datatype:* ["Min8Max28NumericText" on page 374](#)

#### 6.1.7.1.1.1.2 CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identify a card inside a set of cards with the same card number (PAN).

*Datatype:* ["Min2Max3NumericText" on page 373](#)

#### 6.1.7.1.1.1.3 EffectiveDate <FctvDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date as from which the card can be used.

*Datatype:* ["ISOYearMonth" on page 375](#)

#### 6.1.7.1.1.1.4 ExpiryDate <XpryDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Expiry date of the card.

*Datatype:* ["ISOYearMonth" on page 375](#)

#### 6.1.7.1.1.1.5 ServiceCode <SvcCd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Services attached to the card, as defined in ISO 7813.

*Datatype:* ["Exact3NumericText" on page 370](#)

### 6.1.7.1.1.1.6 TrackData <TrckData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Magnetic track or equivalent payment card data.

**TrackData <TrckData>** contains the following **TrackData1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		149
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		149

#### 6.1.7.1.1.1.6.1 TrackNumber <TrckNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Track number of the card.

*Datatype:* ["Exact1NumericText" on page 370](#)

#### 6.1.7.1.1.1.6.2 TrackValue <TrckVal>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Card track content or equivalent.

*Datatype:* ["Max140Text" on page 371](#)

### 6.1.7.1.1.1.7 CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Card security code (CSC) associated with the card performing the transaction.

**CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>** contains the following **CardSecurityInformation1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CSCManagement <CSMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		149
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		150

#### 6.1.7.1.1.1.7.1 CSCManagement <CSMgmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Card security code (CSC) management associated with the transaction.

*Datatype:* ["CSCManagement1Code" on page 350](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
PRST	CSCPresent	Card security code present.
BYPS	CSCByPass	Card security code by-passed or not provided by the merchant.
UNRD	CSCUnread	Card security code unreadable.
NCSC	NoCSC	No card security code imprint.

#### 6.1.7.1.1.7.2 CSCValue <CSCVal>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Card security code (CSC).

*Datatype:* ["Min3Max4NumericText" on page 374](#)

#### 6.1.7.1.1.2 CardCountryCode <CardCtryCd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Country code assigned to the card by the card issuer.

*Datatype:* ["Exact3NumericText" on page 370](#)

#### 6.1.7.1.1.3 CardBrand <CardBrnd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Brand name of the card.

**CardBrand <CardBrnd>** contains the following elements (see ["GenericIdentification1" on page 247](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification </d>	[1..1]	Text		247
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	Text		247
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		248

#### 6.1.7.1.1.4 AdditionalCardData <AddtlCardData>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Additional card issuer specific data.

*Datatype:* ["Max70Text" on page 373](#)

#### 6.1.7.1.2 POI <POI>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Physical or logical card payment terminal containing software and hardware components.

**POI <POI>** contains the following **PointOfInteraction1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification </d>	[1..1]	±		151
	SystemName <SysNm>	[0..1]	Text		152
	GroupIdentification <GrpId>	[0..1]	Text		152
	Capabilities <Cpbilities>	[0..1]			152
	CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpbilities>	[0..*]	CodeSet		152
	CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrdhldrVrfctnCpbilities>	[0..*]	CodeSet		153
	OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpbilities>	[0..1]	CodeSet		153
	DisplayCapabilities <DispCpbilities>	[0..*]			154
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		154
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		154
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		154
	PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>	[0..1]	Text		154
	Component <Cmpnt>	[0..*]			154
	POIComponentType <POICmpntTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		155
	ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrlId>	[0..1]	Text		155
	Model <Mdl>	[0..1]	Text		155
	VersionNumber <VrsnNb>	[0..1]	Text		155
	SerialNumber <SrlNb>	[0..1]	Text		156
	ApprovalNumber <ApprvlNb>	[0..*]	Text		156

#### 6.1.7.1.2.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the POI (Point Of Interaction) for the acquirer or its agent.

**Identification <Id>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification32](#)" on page 249 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification </d>	[1..1]	Text		249
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		249
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	CodeSet		250
	ShortName <ShrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		250

### 6.1.7.1.2.2 SystemName <SysNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Common name assigned by the acquirer to the POI system.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 373

### 6.1.7.1.2.3 GroupIdentification <GrpId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifier assigned by the merchant identifying a set of POI terminals performing some categories of transactions.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 372

### 6.1.7.1.2.4 Capabilities <Cpbilities>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Capabilities of the POI performing the transaction.

**Capabilities <Cpbilities>** contains the following **PointOfInteractionCapabilities1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpbilities>	[0..*]	CodeSet		152
	CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrdhldrVrfctnCpbilities>	[0..*]	CodeSet		153
	OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpbilities>	[0..1]	CodeSet		153
	DisplayCapabilities <DispCpbilities>	[0..*]			154
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		154
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		154
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		154
	PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>	[0..1]	Text		154

#### 6.1.7.1.2.4.1 CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpbilities>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Card reading capabilities of the POI performing the transaction.

*Datatype:* "CardDataReading1Code" on page 347

CodeName	Name	Definition
TAGC	Tag	Tag reading capabilities (RFID, etc.).
PHYS	Physical	Keyboard entry or OCR reading of embossing or printed data, either at time of transaction or after the event.
BRCD	BarCode	Bar code.
MGST	MagneticStripe	Magnetic stripe.
CICC	ICC	ICC (Integrated Circuit Card) with contact containing software applications conform to ISO 7816.

CodeName	Name	Definition
DFLE	AccountData	Account data on file.
CTLS	ProximityReader	Contactless proximity reader.
ECTL	EMVProximityReader	Contactless proximity reader, with application conform to the standard EMV (standard initiated by Europay, Mastercard and Visa).

#### 6.1.7.1.2.4.2 CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrdhldrVrfctnCpbilities>

Presence: [0..\*]

Definition: Cardholder verification capabilities of the POI performing the transaction.

Datatype: ["CardholderVerificationCapability1Code" on page 347](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
MNSG	ManualSignature	Manual signature verification.
NPIN	OnLinePIN	Online PIN (Personal Identification Number).
FCPN	OfflinePINClear	Offline PIN in clear (Personal Identification Number).
FEPN	OfflinePINEncrypted	Offline PIN encrypted (Personal Identification Number).
FDSG	OfflineDigitalSignature	Offline digital signature analysis.
FBIO	OfflineBiometrics	Offline biometrics.
MNVR	ManualVerification	Other manual verification, for example passport or drivers license.
FBIG	OfflineBiographics	Offline biographics.
APKI	AccountDigitalSignature	Account based digital signature.
PKIS	PKISignature	PKI (Public Key Infrastructure) based digital signature.
CHDT	CardholderData	Cardholder authentication data.
SCEC	SecureElectronicCommerce	Three domain secure (three domain secure authentication of the cardholder).

#### 6.1.7.1.2.4.3 OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpbilities>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: On-line and off-line capabilities of the POI.

Datatype: ["OnLineCapability1Code" on page 359](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
OFLN	OffLine	Off-line only capable.
ONLN	OnLine	On-line only capable.
SMON	SemiOffLine	Off-line capable with possible on-line requests to the acquirer.

#### 6.1.7.1.2.4.4 DisplayCapabilities <DispCpbilities>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Capabilities of the display components performing the transaction.

**DisplayCapabilities <DispCpbilities>** contains the following **DisplayCapabilities1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		154
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		154
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		154

##### 6.1.7.1.2.4.4.1 DisplayType <DispTp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of display (for example merchant or cardholder).

*Datatype:* ["UserInterface2Code" on page 365](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
MDSP	MerchantDisplay	Merchant display or interface.
CDSP	CardholderDisplay	Cardholder display or interface.

##### 6.1.7.1.2.4.4.2 NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Number of lines of the display component.

*Datatype:* ["Max3NumericText" on page 372](#)

##### 6.1.7.1.2.4.4.3 LineWidth <LineWidth>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Number of columns of the display component.

*Datatype:* ["Max3NumericText" on page 372](#)

##### 6.1.7.1.2.4.5 PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number of columns of the printer component.

*Datatype:* ["Max3NumericText" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.7.1.2.5 Component <Cmpnt>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Data related to a component of the POI performing the transaction.

**Component <Cmpnt>** contains the following **PointOfInteractionComponent1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	POIComponentType <POICmpntTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		155
	ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrlId>	[0..1]	Text		155
	Model <Mdl>	[0..1]	Text		155
	VersionNumber <VrsnNb>	[0..1]	Text		155
	SerialNumber <SrlNb>	[0..1]	Text		156
	ApprovalNumber <ApprvlNb>	[0..*]	Text		156

#### 6.1.7.1.2.5.1 POIComponentType <POICmpntTp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of component belonging to a POI Terminal.

*Datatype:* "[POIComponentType1Code](#)" on page 360

CodeName	Name	Definition
SOFT	Soft	Payment or other software application.
EMVK	EMVKernel	EMV application kernel (EMV is the chip card specifications initially defined by Eurocard, Mastercard and Visa).
EMVO	EMVLevel1	EMV physical interface (EMV is the chip card specifications initially defined by Eurocard, Mastercard and Visa).
MRIT	MerchantInterface	Merchant interface.
CHIT	CardholderInterface	Cardholder Interface.
SECM	SecureModule	Security module.
PEDV	PINEntryDevice	Personal identification number (or PIN) entry device (PED).

#### 6.1.7.1.2.5.2 ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrlId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the software, hardware or system provider of the POI component.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

#### 6.1.7.1.2.5.3 Model <Mdl>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a model of POI component for a given manufacturer.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

#### 6.1.7.1.2.5.4 VersionNumber <VrsnNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Version of component belonging to a given model.

*Datatype:* "Max16Text" on page 371

#### 6.1.7.1.2.5.5 SerialNumber <SrNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Serial number of a component.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 372

#### 6.1.7.1.2.5.6 ApprovalNumber <ApprvlNb>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Unique approval number for a component, delivered by a certification body.

*Usage:* More than one approval number could be present, when assigned by different bodies. The certification body identification must be provided within the approval number (for example at the beginning of the value).

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 373

#### 6.1.7.1.3 AggregatedEntry <AggtdNtry>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Card entry details, based on card transaction aggregated data performed by the account servicer.

**AggregatedEntry <AggtdNtry>** contains the following **CardAggregated2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		156
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		157
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcnclnId>	[0..1]	Text		157
	SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>	[0..1]			157
	FirstTransaction <FrstTx>	[0..1]	Text		157
	LastTransaction <LastTx>	[0..1]	Text		157
	TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>	[0..1]	±		158

##### 6.1.7.1.3.1 AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Service in addition to the main service.

*Datatype:* "CardPaymentServiceType2Code" on page 348

CodeName	Name	Definition
AGGR	Aggregation	Aggregation of low payments.
DCCV	DCC	Dynamic currency conversion (DCC).
GRTT	Gratuity	Card payment with gratuity.
INSP	Instalment	Instalment payment.

CodeName	Name	Definition
LOYT	Loyalty	Loyalty services.
NRES	NoShow	No show after reservation.
PUCO	PurchaseCorporate	Purchase and corporate data.
RECP	RecurringPayment	Recurring payment.
SOAF	SolicitedAvailableFunds	Solicited available funds.
UNAF	UnsolicitedAvailableFunds	Unsolicited available funds.
VCAU	VoiceAuthorisation	Voice authorisation.

#### 6.1.7.1.3.2 TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Category code conform to ISO 18245, related to the type of services or goods the merchant provides for the transaction.

Datatype: "[ExternalCardTransactionCategory1Code](#)" on page 353

#### 6.1.7.1.3.3 SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification of the sales reconciliation period between the acceptor and the acquirer. This identification might be linked to the identification of the settlement for further verification by the merchant.

Datatype: "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

#### 6.1.7.1.3.4 SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Range of sequence numbers on which the globalisation applies.

**SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>** contains the following **CardSequenceNumberRange1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FirstTransaction < <i>FrstTx</i> >	[0..1]	Text		157
	LastTransaction < <i>LastTx</i> >	[0..1]	Text		157

#### 6.1.7.1.3.4.1 FirstTransaction <FrstTx>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: CardSequenceNumberRange1: FirstTransactionSequenceNumberMessage element to be finalised once feedback from Card SEG has been received.

Datatype: "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

#### 6.1.7.1.3.4.2 LastTransaction <LastTx>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: CardSequenceNumberRange1: LastTransactionSequenceNumberMessage element to be finalised once feedback from Card SEG has been received.

*Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 372*

#### 6.1.7.1.3.5 TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>

*Presence: [0..1]*

*Definition:* Date range on which the globalisation applies.

**TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>** contains one of the following elements (see "["DateOrDateTimePeriod1Choice" on page 235](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	±		235
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	±		235

#### 6.1.7.1.4 PrePaidAccount <PrePdAcct>

*Presence: [0..1]*

*Definition:* Prepaid account for the transfer or loading of an amount of money.

**PrePaidAccount <PrePdAcct>** contains the following elements (see "["CashAccount38" on page 117](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		118
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		118
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	118
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		119
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		119

#### 6.1.7.2 CardTransaction17

*Definition:* Card transaction details.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Card <Card>	[0..1]			161
	PlainCardData <PlainCardData>	[0..1]			162
	PAN <PAN>	[1..1]	Text		163
	CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		163
	EffectiveDate <FctvDt>	[0..1]	YearMonth		163
	ExpiryDate <XpryDt>	[1..1]	YearMonth		163
	ServiceCode <SvcCd>	[0..1]	Text		163
	TrackData <TrckData>	[0..*]			164
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		164
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		164
	CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>	[0..1]			164
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		164
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		165
	CardCountryCode <CardCtryCd>	[0..1]	Text		165
	CardBrand <CardBrnd>	[0..1]	±		165
	AdditionalCardData <AddtlCardData>	[0..1]	Text		165
	POI <POI>	[0..1]			165
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		166
	SystemName <SysNm>	[0..1]	Text		167
	GroupIdentification <Grpld>	[0..1]	Text		167
	Capabilities <Cpbilities>	[0..1]			167
	CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpbilities>	[0..*]	CodeSet		167
	CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrdhldrVrfctnCpbilities>	[0..*]	CodeSet		168
	OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpbilities>	[0..1]	CodeSet		168
	DisplayCapabilities <DispCpbilities>	[0..*]			169
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		169
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		169
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		169
	PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>	[0..1]	Text		169
	Component <Cmpnt>	[0..*]			169
	POICOMPONENTTYPE <POICmpntTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		170

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrlId>	[0..1]	Text		170
	Model <Mdl>	[0..1]	Text		170
	VersionNumber <VrsnNb>	[0..1]	Text		170
	SerialNumber <SrlNb>	[0..1]	Text		171
	ApprovalNumber <ApprvlNb>	[0..*]	Text		171
	Transaction <Tx>	[0..1]			171
{Or}	Aggregated <Aggtd>	[1..1]			173
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		173
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		174
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>	[0..1]	Text		174
	SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>	[0..1]			174
	FirstTransaction <FrstTx>	[0..1]	Text		174
	LastTransaction <LastTx>	[0..1]	Text		174
	TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>	[0..1]	±		175
Or}	Individual <Indv>	[1..1]			175
	ICCRelatedData <ICCRltdData>	[0..1]	Text		177
	PaymentContext <PmtCntxt>	[0..1]			177
	CardPresent <CardPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		177
	CardholderPresent <CrdhldrPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		177
	OnLineContext <OnLineCntxt>	[0..1]	Indicator		178
	AttendanceContext <AttndncCntxt>	[0..1]	CodeSet		178
	TransactionEnvironment <TxEnvrt>	[0..1]	CodeSet		178
	TransactionChannel <TxChnl>	[0..1]	CodeSet		178
	AttendantMessageCapable <AttndntMsgCpbl>	[0..1]	Indicator		179
	AttendantLanguage <AttndntLang>	[0..1]	CodeSet		179
	CardDataEntryMode <CardDataNtryMd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		179
	FallbackIndicator <FlbkInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		179
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[0..1]			180
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		180
	AuthenticationEntity <AuthntcnNtty>	[1..1]	CodeSet		180
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		181

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		181
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>	[0..1]	Text		181
	SaleReferenceNumber <SaleRefNb>	[0..1]	Text		182
	RePresentmentReason <RePresntmntRsn>	[0..1]	CodeSet		182
	SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		182
	TransactionIdentification <TxId>	[0..1]	±		182
	Product <Pdct>	[0..1]			182
	ProductCode <PdctCd>	[1..1]	Text		183
	UnitOfMeasure <UnitOfMeasr>	[0..1]	CodeSet		183
	ProductQuantity <PdctQty>	[0..1]	Quantity		184
	UnitPrice <UnitPric>	[0..1]	Amount		184
	ProductAmount <PdctAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		184
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		185
	AdditionalProductInformation <AddtlPdctInf>	[0..1]	Text		185
	ValidationDate <VldtnDt>	[0..1]	Date		185
	ValidationSequenceNumber <VldtnSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		185
	PrePaidAccount <PrePdAcct>	[0..1]	±		185

#### 6.1.7.2.1 Card <Card>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Electronic money product that provides the cardholder with a portable and specialised computer device, which typically contains a microprocessor.

**Card <Card>** contains the following **PaymentCard4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlainCardData <PlainCardData>	[0..1]			162
	PAN <PAN>	[1..1]	Text		163
	CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		163
	EffectiveDate <FctvDt>	[0..1]	YearMonth		163
	ExpiryDate <XpryDt>	[1..1]	YearMonth		163
	ServiceCode <SvcCd>	[0..1]	Text		163
	TrackData <TrckData>	[0..*]			164
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		164
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		164
	CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>	[0..1]			164
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		164
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		165
	CardCountryCode <CardCtryCd>	[0..1]	Text		165
	CardBrand <CardBrnd>	[0..1]	±		165
	AdditionalCardData <AddtlCardData>	[0..1]	Text		165

#### 6.1.7.2.1.1 PlainCardData <PlainCardData>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Sensitive data associated with the card performing the transaction.

**PlainCardData <PlainCardData>** contains the following **PlainCardData1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PAN <PAN>	[1..1]	Text		163
	CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		163
	EffectiveDate <FctvDt>	[0..1]	YearMonth		163
	ExpiryDate <XpryDt>	[1..1]	YearMonth		163
	ServiceCode <SvcCd>	[0..1]	Text		163
	TrackData <TrckData>	[0..*]			164
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		164
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		164
	CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>	[0..1]			164
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		164
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		165

#### 6.1.7.2.1.1.1 PAN <PAN>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Primary Account Number (PAN) of the card, or card number.

*Datatype:* ["Min8Max28NumericText" on page 374](#)

#### 6.1.7.2.1.1.2 CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identify a card inside a set of cards with the same card number (PAN).

*Datatype:* ["Min2Max3NumericText" on page 373](#)

#### 6.1.7.2.1.1.3 EffectiveDate <FctvDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date as from which the card can be used.

*Datatype:* ["ISOYearMonth" on page 375](#)

#### 6.1.7.2.1.1.4 ExpiryDate <XpryDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Expiry date of the card.

*Datatype:* ["ISOYearMonth" on page 375](#)

#### 6.1.7.2.1.1.5 ServiceCode <SvcCd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Services attached to the card, as defined in ISO 7813.

*Datatype:* ["Exact3NumericText" on page 370](#)

### 6.1.7.2.1.1.6 TrackData <TrckData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Magnetic track or equivalent payment card data.

**TrackData <TrckData>** contains the following **TrackData1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		164
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		164

#### 6.1.7.2.1.1.6.1 TrackNumber <TrckNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Track number of the card.

*Datatype:* ["Exact1NumericText" on page 370](#)

#### 6.1.7.2.1.1.6.2 TrackValue <TrckVal>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Card track content or equivalent.

*Datatype:* ["Max140Text" on page 371](#)

### 6.1.7.2.1.1.7 CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Card security code (CSC) associated with the card performing the transaction.

**CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>** contains the following **CardSecurityInformation1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CSCManagement <CSMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		164
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		165

#### 6.1.7.2.1.1.7.1 CSCManagement <CSMgmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Card security code (CSC) management associated with the transaction.

*Datatype:* ["CSCManagement1Code" on page 350](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
PRST	CSCPresent	Card security code present.
BYPS	CSCByPass	Card security code by-passed or not provided by the merchant.
UNRD	CSCUnread	Card security code unreadable.
NCSC	NoCSC	No card security code imprint.

#### 6.1.7.2.1.1.7.2 CSCValue <CSCVal>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Card security code (CSC).

*Datatype:* ["Min3Max4NumericText" on page 374](#)

#### 6.1.7.2.1.2 CardCountryCode <CardCtryCd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Country code assigned to the card by the card issuer.

*Datatype:* ["Exact3NumericText" on page 370](#)

#### 6.1.7.2.1.3 CardBrand <CardBrnd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Brand name of the card.

**CardBrand <CardBrnd>** contains the following elements (see ["GenericIdentification1" on page 247](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification </d>	[1..1]	Text		247
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	Text		247
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		248

#### 6.1.7.2.1.4 AdditionalCardData <AddtlCardData>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Additional card issuer specific data.

*Datatype:* ["Max70Text" on page 373](#)

#### 6.1.7.2.2 POI <POI>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Physical or logical card payment terminal containing software and hardware components.

**POI <POI>** contains the following **PointOfInteraction1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification </d>	[1..1]	±		166
	SystemName <SysNm>	[0..1]	Text		167
	GroupIdentification <GrpId>	[0..1]	Text		167
	Capabilities <Cpbilities>	[0..1]			167
	CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpbilities>	[0..*]	CodeSet		167
	CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrdhldrVrfctnCpbilities>	[0..*]	CodeSet		168
	OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpbilities>	[0..1]	CodeSet		168
	DisplayCapabilities <DispCpbilities>	[0..*]			169
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		169
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		169
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		169
	PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>	[0..1]	Text		169
	Component <Cmpnt>	[0..*]			169
	POIComponentType <POICmpntTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		170
	ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrlId>	[0..1]	Text		170
	Model <Mdl>	[0..1]	Text		170
	VersionNumber <VrsnNb>	[0..1]	Text		170
	SerialNumber <SrlNb>	[0..1]	Text		171
	ApprovalNumber <ApprvlNb>	[0..*]	Text		171

#### 6.1.7.2.2.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the POI (Point Of Interaction) for the acquirer or its agent.

**Identification <Id>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification32](#)" on page 249 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification </d>	[1..1]	Text		249
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		249
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	CodeSet		250
	ShortName <ShrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		250

### 6.1.7.2.2.2 SystemName <SysNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Common name assigned by the acquirer to the POI system.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 373

### 6.1.7.2.2.3 GroupIdentification <GrpId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifier assigned by the merchant identifying a set of POI terminals performing some categories of transactions.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 372

### 6.1.7.2.2.4 Capabilities <Cpbilities>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Capabilities of the POI performing the transaction.

**Capabilities <Cpbilities>** contains the following **PointOfInteractionCapabilites1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpbilities>	[0..*]	CodeSet		167
	CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrdhldrVrfctnCpbilities>	[0..*]	CodeSet		168
	OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpbilities>	[0..1]	CodeSet		168
	DisplayCapabilities <DispCpbilities>	[0..*]			169
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		169
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		169
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		169
	PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>	[0..1]	Text		169

#### 6.1.7.2.2.4.1 CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpbilities>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Card reading capabilities of the POI performing the transaction.

*Datatype:* "CardDataReading1Code" on page 347

CodeName	Name	Definition
TAGC	Tag	Tag reading capabilities (RFID, etc.).
PHYS	Physical	Keyboard entry or OCR reading of embossing or printed data, either at time of transaction or after the event.
BRCD	BarCode	Bar code.
MGST	MagneticStripe	Magnetic stripe.
CICC	ICC	ICC (Integrated Circuit Card) with contact containing software applications conform to ISO 7816.

CodeName	Name	Definition
DFLE	AccountData	Account data on file.
CTLS	ProximityReader	Contactless proximity reader.
ECTL	EMVProximityReader	Contactless proximity reader, with application conform to the standard EMV (standard initiated by Europay, Mastercard and Visa).

#### 6.1.7.2.2.4.2 CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrdhldrVrfctnCpbilities>

Presence: [0..\*]

Definition: Cardholder verification capabilities of the POI performing the transaction.

Datatype: ["CardholderVerificationCapability1Code" on page 347](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
MNSG	ManualSignature	Manual signature verification.
NPIN	OnLinePIN	Online PIN (Personal Identification Number).
FCPN	OfflinePINClear	Offline PIN in clear (Personal Identification Number).
FEPN	OfflinePINEncrypted	Offline PIN encrypted (Personal Identification Number).
FDSG	OfflineDigitalSignature	Offline digital signature analysis.
FBIO	OfflineBiometrics	Offline biometrics.
MNVR	ManualVerification	Other manual verification, for example passport or drivers license.
FBIG	OfflineBiographics	Offline biographics.
APKI	AccountDigitalSignature	Account based digital signature.
PKIS	PKISignature	PKI (Public Key Infrastructure) based digital signature.
CHDT	CardholderData	Cardholder authentication data.
SCEC	SecureElectronicCommerce	Three domain secure (three domain secure authentication of the cardholder).

#### 6.1.7.2.2.4.3 OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpbilities>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: On-line and off-line capabilities of the POI.

Datatype: ["OnLineCapability1Code" on page 359](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
OFLN	OffLine	Off-line only capable.
ONLN	OnLine	On-line only capable.
SMON	SemiOffLine	Off-line capable with possible on-line requests to the acquirer.

#### 6.1.7.2.2.4.4 DisplayCapabilities <DispCpbilities>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Capabilities of the display components performing the transaction.

**DisplayCapabilities <DispCpbilities>** contains the following **DisplayCapabilities1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		169
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		169
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		169

##### 6.1.7.2.2.4.4.1 DisplayType <DispTp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of display (for example merchant or cardholder).

*Datatype:* ["UserInterface2Code" on page 365](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
MDSP	MerchantDisplay	Merchant display or interface.
CDSP	CardholderDisplay	Cardholder display or interface.

##### 6.1.7.2.2.4.4.2 NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Number of lines of the display component.

*Datatype:* ["Max3NumericText" on page 372](#)

##### 6.1.7.2.2.4.4.3 LineWidth <LineWidth>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Number of columns of the display component.

*Datatype:* ["Max3NumericText" on page 372](#)

##### 6.1.7.2.2.4.5 PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number of columns of the printer component.

*Datatype:* ["Max3NumericText" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.7.2.2.5 Component <Cmpnt>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Data related to a component of the POI performing the transaction.

**Component <Cmpnt>** contains the following **PointOfInteractionComponent1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	POIComponentType <POICmpntTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		170
	ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrlId>	[0..1]	Text		170
	Model <Mdl>	[0..1]	Text		170
	VersionNumber <VrsnNb>	[0..1]	Text		170
	SerialNumber <SrlNb>	[0..1]	Text		171
	ApprovalNumber <ApprvlNb>	[0..*]	Text		171

#### 6.1.7.2.2.5.1 POIComponentType <POICmpntTp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of component belonging to a POI Terminal.

*Datatype:* "[POIComponentType1Code](#)" on page 360

CodeName	Name	Definition
SOFT	Soft	Payment or other software application.
EMVK	EMVKernel	EMV application kernel (EMV is the chip card specifications initially defined by Eurocard, Mastercard and Visa).
EMVO	EMVLevel1	EMV physical interface (EMV is the chip card specifications initially defined by Eurocard, Mastercard and Visa).
MRIT	MerchantInterface	Merchant interface.
CHIT	CardholderInterface	Cardholder Interface.
SECM	SecureModule	Security module.
PEDV	PINEntryDevice	Personal identification number (or PIN) entry device (PED).

#### 6.1.7.2.2.5.2 ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrlId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the software, hardware or system provider of the POI component.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

#### 6.1.7.2.2.5.3 Model <Mdl>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a model of POI component for a given manufacturer.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

#### 6.1.7.2.2.5.4 VersionNumber <VrsnNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Version of component belonging to a given model.

*Datatype:* "Max16Text" on page 371

#### 6.1.7.2.2.5.5 SerialNumber <SrINb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Serial number of a component.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 372

#### 6.1.7.2.2.5.6 ApprovalNumber <ApprvINb>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Unique approval number for a component, delivered by a certification body.

*Usage:* More than one approval number could be present, when assigned by different bodies. The certification body identification must be provided within the approval number (for example at the beginning of the value).

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 373

#### 6.1.7.2.3 Transaction <Tx>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Card transaction details, which can be either globalised by the acquirer or individual transaction.

**Transaction <Tx>** contains one of the following **CardTransaction3Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Aggregated <Aggtd>	[1..1]			173
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		173
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		174
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>	[0..1]	Text		174
	SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>	[0..1]			174
	FirstTransaction <FrstTx>	[0..1]	Text		174
	LastTransaction <LastTx>	[0..1]	Text		174
	TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>	[0..1]	±		175
Or}	Individual <Indv>	[1..1]			175
	ICCRelatedData <ICCRltdData>	[0..1]	Text		177
	PaymentContext <PmtCntxt>	[0..1]			177
	CardPresent <CardPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		177
	CardholderPresent <CrdhldrPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		177
	OnLineContext <OnLineCntxt>	[0..1]	Indicator		178
	AttendanceContext <AttnndncCntxt>	[0..1]	CodeSet		178
	TransactionEnvironment <TxEnvrt>	[0..1]	CodeSet		178
	TransactionChannel <TxChnl>	[0..1]	CodeSet		178
	AttendantMessageCapable <AttnndntMsgCpbl>	[0..1]	Indicator		179
	AttendantLanguage <AttnndntLang>	[0..1]	CodeSet		179
	CardDataEntryMode <CardDataNtryMd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		179
	FallbackIndicator <FlbckInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		179
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[0..1]			180
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		180
	AuthenticationEntity <AuthntcnNtty>	[1..1]	CodeSet		180
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		181
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		181
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>	[0..1]	Text		181
	SaleReferenceNumber <SaleRefNb>	[0..1]	Text		182
	RePresentmentReason <RePresmntRsn>	[0..1]	CodeSet		182
	SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		182
	TransactionIdentification <TxId>	[0..1]	±		182

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Product <Pdct>	[0..1]			182
	ProductCode <PdctCd>	[1..1]	Text		183
	UnitOfMeasure <UnitOfMeasr>	[0..1]	CodeSet		183
	ProductQuantity <PdctQty>	[0..1]	Quantity		184
	UnitPrice <UnitPric>	[0..1]	Amount		184
	ProductAmount <PdctAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		184
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		185
	AdditionalProductInformation <AddtlPdctInft>	[0..1]	Text		185
	ValidationDate <VldtnDt>	[0..1]	Date		185
	ValidationSequenceNumber <VldtnSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		185

#### 6.1.7.2.3.1 Aggregated <Aggtd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Card transaction details, based on card transaction aggregated data performed by the card acquirer.

Aggregated <Aggtd> contains the following **CardAggregated2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		173
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		174
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcnclnId>	[0..1]	Text		174
	SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>	[0..1]			174
	FirstTransaction <FrstTx>	[0..1]	Text		174
	LastTransaction <LastTx>	[0..1]	Text		174
	TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>	[0..1]	±		175

##### 6.1.7.2.3.1.1 AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Service in addition to the main service.

Datatype: "CardPaymentServiceType2Code" on page 348

CodeName	Name	Definition
AGGR	Aggregation	Aggregation of low payments.
DCCV	DCC	Dynamic currency conversion (DCC).
GRTT	Gratuity	Card payment with gratuity.
INSP	Instalment	Instalment payment.

CodeName	Name	Definition
LOYT	Loyalty	Loyalty services.
NRES	NoShow	No show after reservation.
PUCO	PurchaseCorporate	Purchase and corporate data.
RECP	RecurringPayment	Recurring payment.
SOAF	SolicitedAvailableFunds	Solicited available funds.
UNAF	UnsolicitedAvailableFunds	Unsolicited available funds.
VCAU	VoiceAuthorisation	Voice authorisation.

#### 6.1.7.2.3.1.2 TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Category code conform to ISO 18245, related to the type of services or goods the merchant provides for the transaction.

Datatype: "[ExternalCardTransactionCategory1Code](#)" on page 353

#### 6.1.7.2.3.1.3 SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification of the sales reconciliation period between the acceptor and the acquirer. This identification might be linked to the identification of the settlement for further verification by the merchant.

Datatype: "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

#### 6.1.7.2.3.1.4 SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Range of sequence numbers on which the globalisation applies.

**SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>** contains the following **CardSequenceNumberRange1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FirstTransaction < <i>FrstTx</i> >	[0..1]	Text		174
	LastTransaction < <i>LastTx</i> >	[0..1]	Text		174

#### 6.1.7.2.3.1.4.1 FirstTransaction <FrstTx>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: CardSequenceNumberRange1: FirstTransactionSequenceNumberMessage element to be finalised once feedback from Card SEG has been received.

Datatype: "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

#### 6.1.7.2.3.1.4.2 LastTransaction <LastTx>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: CardSequenceNumberRange1: LastTransactionSequenceNumberMessage element to be finalised once feedback from Card SEG has been received.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.7.2.3.1.5 TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date range on which the globalisation applies.

**TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DateOrDateTimePeriod1Choice](#)" on page 235 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	±		235
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	±		235

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2 Individual <Indv>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Card transaction details for the individual transaction, as recorded at the POI (point of interaction).

**Individual <Indv>** contains the following **CardIndividualTransaction2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ICCRelatedData <CCRltdData>	[0..1]	Text		177
	PaymentContext <PmtCntxt>	[0..1]			177
	CardPresent <CardPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		177
	CardholderPresent <CrdhldrPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		177
	OnLineContext <OnLineCntxt>	[0..1]	Indicator		178
	AttendanceContext <AttnDncCntxt>	[0..1]	CodeSet		178
	TransactionEnvironment <TxEnvrt>	[0..1]	CodeSet		178
	TransactionChannel <TxChnl>	[0..1]	CodeSet		178
	AttendantMessageCapable <AttnDntMsgCpbl>	[0..1]	Indicator		179
	AttendantLanguage <AttnDntLang>	[0..1]	CodeSet		179
	CardDataEntryMode <CardDataNtryMd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		179
	FallbackIndicator <FlbckInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		179
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[0..1]			180
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		180
	AuthenticationEntity <AuthntcnNtty>	[1..1]	CodeSet		180
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		181
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		181
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcnclnId>	[0..1]	Text		181
	SaleReferenceNumber <SaleRefNb>	[0..1]	Text		182
	RePresentationReason <RePresmntRsn>	[0..1]	CodeSet		182
	SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		182
	TransactionIdentification <TxId>	[0..1]	±		182
	Product <Pdct>	[0..1]			182
	ProductCode <PdctCd>	[1..1]	Text		183
	UnitOfMeasure <UnitOfMeasr>	[0..1]	CodeSet		183
	ProductQuantity <PdctQty>	[0..1]	Quantity		184
	UnitPrice <UnitPric>	[0..1]	Amount		184
	ProductAmount <PdctAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		184
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		185
	AdditionalProductInformation <AddtlPdctInf>	[0..1]	Text		185
	ValidationDate <VldtnDt>	[0..1]	Date		185

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ValidationSequenceNumber <VldtnSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		185

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.1 ICCRelatedData <ICCRltdData>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Data related to an integrated circuit card application.

Datatype: "Max1025Text" on page 370

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.2 PaymentContext <PmtCntxt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Context of the card payment transaction.

PaymentContext <PmtCntxt> contains the following PaymentContext3 elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CardPresent <CardPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		177
	CardholderPresent <CrdhldrPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		177
	OnLineContext <OnLineCntxt>	[0..1]	Indicator		178
	AttendanceContext <AttdncCntxt>	[0..1]	CodeSet		178
	TransactionEnvironment <TxEnvt>	[0..1]	CodeSet		178
	TransactionChannel <TxChnl>	[0..1]	CodeSet		178
	AttendantMessageCapable <AttdntMsgCpbl>	[0..1]	Indicator		179
	AttendantLanguage <AttdntLang>	[0..1]	CodeSet		179
	CardDataEntryMode <CardDataNtryMd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		179
	FallbackIndicator <FlbkInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		179
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[0..1]			180
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		180
	AuthenticationEntity <AuthntcnNtly>	[1..1]	CodeSet		180

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.2.1 CardPresent <CardPres>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates whether the transaction has been initiated by a card physically present or not.

Datatype: One of the following values must be used (see "[TrueFalseIndicator](#)" on page 368):

- Meaning When True: True
- Meaning When False: False

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.2.2 CardholderPresent <CrdhldrPres>

Presence: [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the transaction has been initiated in presence of the cardholder or not.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "[TrueFalseIndicator](#)" on page 368):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.2.3 OnLineContext <OnLineCntxt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* On-line or off-line context of the transaction.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "[TrueFalseIndicator](#)" on page 368):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.2.4 AttendanceContext <AttnDncCntxt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Human attendance at the POI location during the transaction.

*Datatype:* "[AttendanceContext1Code](#)" on page 346

CodeName	Name	Definition
ATTD	Attended	Attended payment, with an attendant.
SATT	SemiAttended	Semi-attended, including self checkout. An attendant supervises several payment, and could be called to help the cardholder.
UATT	Unattended	Unattended payment, no attendant present.

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.2.5 TransactionEnvironment <TxEnvrt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates the environment of the transaction.

*Datatype:* "[TransactionEnvironment1Code](#)" on page 364

CodeName	Name	Definition
MERC	Merchant	Merchant environment.
PRIV	Private	Private environment.
PUBL	Public	Public environment.

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.2.6 TransactionChannel <TxChnl>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the type of the communication channels used by the cardholder to the acceptor system.

*Datatype:* "[TransactionChannel1Code](#)" on page 363

CodeName	Name	Definition
MAIL	MailOrder	Mail order.
TLPH	TelephoneOrder	Telephone order.
ECOM	ElectronicCommerce	Electronic commerce.
TVPY	TelevisionPayment	Payment on television.

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.2.7 AttendantMessageCapable <AtndntMsgCpbl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates whether a message can be sent or not on an attendant display (attendant display present or not).

Datatype: One of the following values must be used (see "[TrueFalseIndicator](#)" on page 368):

- Meaning When True: True
- Meaning When False: False

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.2.8 AttendantLanguage <AtndntLang>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Language used to display messages to the attendant.

Datatype: "[ISO2ALanguageCode](#)" on page 359

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.2.9 CardDataEntryMode <CardDataNtryMd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Entry mode of the card data.

Datatype: "[CardDataReading1Code](#)" on page 347

CodeName	Name	Definition
TAGC	Tag	Tag reading capabilities (RFID, etc.).
PHYS	Physical	Keyboard entry or OCR reading of embossing or printed data, either at time of transaction or after the event.
BRCD	BarCode	Bar code.
MGST	MagneticStripe	Magnetic stripe.
CICC	ICC	ICC (Integrated Circuit Card) with contact containing software applications conform to ISO 7816.
DFLE	AccountData	Account data on file.
CTLS	ProximityReader	Contactless proximity reader.
ECTL	EMVProximityReader	Contactless proximity reader, with application conform to the standard EMV (standard initiated by Europay, Mastercard and Visa).

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.2.10 FallbackIndicator <FlbckInd>

Presence: [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicator of a card entry mode fallback.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "[TrueFalseIndicator](#)" on page 368):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.2.11 AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Method used to authenticate a cardholder.

**AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>** contains the following **CardholderAuthentication2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		180
	AuthenticationEntity <AuthntcnNtty>	[1..1]	CodeSet		180

##### 6.1.7.2.3.2.2.11.1 AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Method used to authenticate the cardholder.

*Datatype:* "[AuthenticationMethod1Code](#)" on page 346

CodeName	Name	Definition
UKNW	UnknownMethod	Authentication method is performed unknown.
BYPS	Bypass	Authentication bypassed by the merchant.
NPIN	OnLinePIN	On-line PIN authentication (Personal Identification Number).
FPIN	OfflinePIN	Off-line PIN authentication (Personal Identification Number).
CPSG	SignatureCapture	Electronic signature capture (handwritten signature).
PPSG	PaperSignature	Handwritten paper signature.
MANU	ManualVerification	Manual verification, for example passport or drivers license.
MERC	MerchantAuthentication	Merchant-related authentication.
SCRT	SecureCertificate	Electronic commerce transaction secured with the X.509 certificate of a customer.
SNCT	SecureNoCertificate	Secure electronic transaction without cardholder certificate.
SCNL	SecuredChannel	Channel-encrypted transaction.

##### 6.1.7.2.3.2.2.11.2 AuthenticationEntity <AuthntcnNtty>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Entity or object in charge of verifying the cardholder authenticity.

*Datatype:* "AuthenticationEntity1Code" on page 346

CodeName	Name	Definition
ICCD	ICC	Application in the chip card (Integrated Circuit Card), for instance an offline PIN verification.
AGNT	AuthorisedAgent	Authorisation agent of the issuer.
MERC	Merchant	Merchant (for example signature verification by the attendant).

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.3 AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Service in addition to the main service.

*Datatype:* "CardPaymentServiceType2Code" on page 348

CodeName	Name	Definition
AGGR	Aggregation	Aggregation of low payments.
DCCV	DCC	Dynamic currency conversion (DCC).
GRTT	Gratuity	Card payment with gratuity.
INSP	Instalment	Instalment payment.
LOYT	Loyalty	Loyalty services.
NRES	NoShow	No show after reservation.
PUCO	PurchaseCorporate	Purchase and corporate data.
RECP	RecurringPayment	Recurring payment.
SOAF	SolicitedAvailableFunds	Solicited available funds.
UNAF	UnsolicitedAvailableFunds	Unsolicited available funds.
VCAU	VoiceAuthorisation	Voice authorisation.

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.4 TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Category code conform to ISO 18245, related to the type of services or goods the merchant provides for the transaction.

This element is also known as the MerchantCategoryCode.

*Datatype:* "ExternalCardTransactionCategory1Code" on page 353

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.5 SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcnclnId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification of the sales reconciliation period between the acceptor and the acquirer. This identification might be linked to the identification of the settlement for further verification by the merchant.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 372

### 6.1.7.2.3.2.6 SaleReferenceNumber <SaleRefNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique reference of the sales as provided by the merchant.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

### 6.1.7.2.3.2.7 RePresentmtnReason <RePresmntRsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Reason for representment of a card transaction.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalRePresentmtnReason1Code" on page 357](#)

### 6.1.7.2.3.2.8 SequenceNumber <SeqNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Sequential number of the card transaction, as assigned by the POI (Point of Interaction).

*Usage:* The sequential number is increased incrementally for each transaction.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

### 6.1.7.2.3.2.9 TransactionIdentification <TxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the transaction assigned by the POI (Point Of Interaction).

**TransactionIdentification <TxId>** contains the following elements (see ["TransactionIdentifier1" on page 272](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TransactionDateTime <TxDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		272
	TransactionReference <TxRef>	[1..1]	Text		272

### 6.1.7.2.3.2.10 Product <Pdct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Product purchased with the transaction.

**Product <Pdct>** contains the following **Product2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ProductCode <PdctCd>	[1..1]	Text		183
	UnitOfMeasure <UnitOfMeasr>	[0..1]	CodeSet		183
	ProductQuantity <PdctQty>	[0..1]	Quantity		184
	UnitPrice <UnitPric>	[0..1]	Amount		184
	ProductAmount <PdctAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		184
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		185
	AdditionalProductInformation <AddtlPdctInf>	[0..1]	Text		185

### 6.1.7.2.3.2.10.1 ProductCode <PdctCd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Product code of the item purchased.

*Datatype:* ["Max70Text" on page 373](#)

### 6.1.7.2.3.2.10.2 UnitOfMeasure <UnitOfMeasr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unit of measure of the item purchased.

*Datatype:* ["UnitOfMeasure1Code" on page 364](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
PIEC	Piece	Standard length of cloth, wallpaper, as an item for sale or amount of a substance.
TONS	Ton	Measure of weight, in Britain 2240lb (long ton)and in the US 2000lb (short ton).
FOOT	Foot	Unit of length equal to 1/3 yard.
GBGA	GBGallon	Unit of volume that is equal to 8 pints.
USGA	USGallon	Unit of volume that is equal to 8 pints.
GRAM	Gram	Unit of measure that is equal to a 1,000th of a kilo.
INCH	Inch	Measure of length equal to 2.54 cm.
KILO	Kilogram	Basic unit of mass in the SI system, 1000 grams.
PUND	Pound	Unit of weight equal to 0.454 kilograms.
METR	Metre	Unit of length in the metric system, equal to 39.37 inches.
CMET	Centimetre	Unit of measure that is equal to one hundredth of a metre.
MMET	Millimetre	Unit of measure that is a thousandth of one metre.
LITR	Litre	Unit of volume that is equal to a thousand cubic centimetres.
CELI	Centilitre	Unit of volume that is equal to one hundredth of a litre.
MILI	MilliLitre	Unit of volume that is equal to one thousandth of a litre.
GBOU	GBOunce	Unit of weight equal to a sixteenth of a pound.
USOU	USOunce	Unit of weight equal to a sixteenth of a pound.
GBQA	GBQuart	Unit of volume that is equal to 2 pints.
USQA	USQuart	Unit of volume that is equal to 2 pints.

CodeName	Name	Definition
GBPI	GBPint	Unit of volume that is equal to 568 cubic centimetres.
USPI	USPint	Unit of volume that is equal to 473 cubic centimetres.
MILE	Mile	Unit of length equal to 1, 760 yards.
KMET	Kilometre	Unit of measure that is equal to 1, 000 meters.
YARD	Yard	Unit of length equal to 3 feet or 0.9144 metre.
SQKI	SquareKilometre	Measure of a surface, one kilometre by one kilometre.
HECT	Hectare	Unit of measure that is equal to 10, 000 square meters.
ARES	Are	Unit of measure equal to a 100 square meters.
SMET	SquareMetre	Measure of a surface, one metre by one metre.
SCMT	SquareCentimetre	Measure of a surface, one centimetre by one centimetre.
SMIL	SquareMillimetre	Measure of a surface, one millimetre by one millimetre.
SQMI	SquareMile	Measure of a surface, one mile by one mile.
SQYA	SquareYard	Measure of a surface, one yard by one yard.
SQFO	SquareFoot	Measure of a surface, one foot by one foot.
SQIN	SquareInch	Measure of a surface, one inch by one inch.
ACRE	Acre	Unit of measure equal to 4, 840 square yards.

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.10.3 ProductQuantity <PdctQty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Product quantity.

*Datatype:* ["DecimalNumber" on page 369](#)

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.10.4 UnitPrice <UnitPric>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Price per unit of product.

*Datatype:* ["ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344](#)

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.10.5 ProductAmount <PdctAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Monetary value of purchased product.

*Datatype:* ["ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344](#)

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.10.6 TaxType <TaxTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Information on tax paid on the product.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.10.7 AdditionalProductInformation <AddtlPdctInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Additional information related to the product.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.11 ValidationDate <VldtnDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date when the deposit was validated by the financial institution that collected the cash.

*Datatype:* ["ISODate" on page 366](#)

#### 6.1.7.2.3.2.12 ValidationSequenceNumber <VldtnSeqNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Sequential number of the validation of the cash deposit.

*Usage:* The sequential number is increased incrementally for each transaction.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.7.2.4 PrePaidAccount <PrePdAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Prepaid account for the transfer or loading of an amount of money.

**PrePaidAccount <PrePdAcct>** contains the following elements (see ["CashAccount38" on page 117](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		118
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		118
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	118
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		119
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		119

## 6.1.8 Cash

### 6.1.8.1 CashDeposit1

*Definition:* Deposit of an amount of money defined in cash notes and/or coins.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NoteDenomination <NoteDnmtn>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	186
	NumberOfNotes <NbOfNotes>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	186

#### 6.1.8.1.1 NoteDenomination <NoteDnmtn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the note or coin denomination, including the currency, such as a 50 euro note.

*Impacted by:* C1 "ActiveCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 343

#### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

*Note:* The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.8.1.2 NumberOfNotes <NbOfNotes>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the number of notes of the same denomination in the deposit.

*Datatype:* "Max15NumericText" on page 371

#### 6.1.8.1.3 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the total amount of money in the cash deposit, that is the note denomination times the number of notes.

*Impacted by:* C1 "ActiveCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 343

## Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

## 6.1.9 Cash Entry

### 6.1.9.1 CashAvailability1

*Definition:* Indicates when the amount of money will become available, that is can be accessed and start generating interest.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			187
{Or}	NumberOfDays <NbOfDays>	[1..1]	Text		187
Or}	ActualDate <ActlDt>	[1..1]	Date		187
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	188
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		188

#### 6.1.9.1.1 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates when the amount of money will become available.

**Date <Dt>** contains one of the following **CashAvailabilityDate1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	NumberOfDays <NbOfDays>	[1..1]	Text		187
Or}	ActualDate <ActlDt>	[1..1]	Date		187

##### 6.1.9.1.1.1 NumberOfDays <NbOfDays>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates the number of float days attached to the balance.

*Datatype:* "Max15PlusSignedNumericText" on page 371

##### 6.1.9.1.1.2 ActualDate <ActlDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the actual availability date.

*Datatype:* ["ISODate" on page 366](#)

#### 6.1.9.1.2 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the available amount.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344](#)

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.9.1.3 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the availability balance is a credit or a debit balance.

*Usage:* A zero balance is considered to be a credit balance.

*Datatype:* ["CreditDebitCode" on page 350](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

#### 6.1.9.2 EntryTransaction10

*Definition:* Identifies the underlying transaction.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	References <Refs>	[0..1]			192
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		192
	AccountServiceReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		192
	PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInfld>	[0..1]	Text		192
	InstructionIdentification <InstrId>	[0..1]	Text		193
	EndToEndIdentification <EndToEndId>	[0..1]	Text		193
	UETR <UETR>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		193
	TransactionIdentification <TxId>	[0..1]	Text		193
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		193
	ChequeNumber <ChqNb>	[0..1]	Text		194
	ClearingSystemReference <ClrSysRef>	[0..1]	Text		194
	AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		194
	AccountServiceTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		194
	MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		194
	ProcessingIdentification <PrcgId>	[0..1]	Text		194
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			194
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		195
	Reference <Ref>	[1..1]	Text		195
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	195
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		195
	AmountDetails <AmtDtls>	[0..1]	±		196
	Availability <Avlblty>	[0..*]	±		198
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[0..1]	±	C10, C11	199
	Charges <Chrgs>	[0..1]	±		199
	Interest <Intrst>	[0..1]	±		199
	RelatedParties <RltdPties>	[0..1]			200
	InitiatingParty <InitgPty>	[0..1]	±		201
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		201
	DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		201
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		202

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		202
	CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		202
	UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		203
	TradingParty <TradgPty>	[0..1]	±		203
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			203
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		204
	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		204
	RelatedAgents <RltdAgts>	[0..1]			204
	InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		205
	InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		205
	DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		206
	CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		206
	IntermediaryAgent1 <IntrmyAgt1>	[0..1]	±		206
	IntermediaryAgent2 <IntrmyAgt2>	[0..1]	±		206
	IntermediaryAgent3 <IntrmyAgt3>	[0..1]	±		207
	ReceivingAgent <RcvgAgt>	[0..1]	±		207
	DeliveringAgent <DlvrgAgt>	[0..1]	±		207
	IssuingAgent <IssgAgt>	[0..1]	±		208
	SettlementPlace <SttlmPlc>	[0..1]	±		208
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			208
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		208
	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		209
	LocallInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			209
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		209
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		209
	Purpose <Purp>	[0..1]	±		209
	RelatedRemittanceInformation <RltdRmtlnf>	[0..10]	±		210
	RemittanceInformation <Rmtlnf>	[0..1]	±		210
	RelatedDates <RltdDts>	[0..1]			210
	AcceptanceDateTime <AccptncDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		211
	TradeActivityContractualSettlementDate <TradActvtyCtrctlSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		211

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TradeDate <TradDt>	[0..1]	Date		211
	InterbankSettlementDate <IntrBkSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		211
	StartDate <StartDt>	[0..1]	Date		211
	EndDate <EndDt>	[0..1]	Date		212
	TransactionDateTime <TxDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		212
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			212
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		212
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	±		212
	RelatedPrice <RltdPric>	[0..1]			212
{Or}	DealPrice <DealPric>	[1..1]	±		213
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..*]			213
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		213
	Price <Pric>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	213
	RelatedQuantities <RltdQties>	[0..*]			214
{Or}	Quantity <Qty>	[1..1]	±		214
Or	OriginalAndCurrentFaceAmount <OrgnlAndCurFaceAmt>	[1..1]	±		214
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]			215
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		215
	Quantity <Qty>	[1..1]	Text		215
	FinancialInstrumentIdentification <FinInstrmId>	[0..1]	±	C8, C9, C14, C15, C17	215
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]	±		216
	ReturnInformation <Rtrlnf>	[0..1]	±	C19	217
	CorporateAction <CorpActn>	[0..1]			218
	EventType <EvtTp>	[1..1]	Text		218
	EventIdentification <EvtId>	[1..1]	Text		218
	SafekeepingAccount <SfkpgAcct>	[0..1]	±		218
	CashDeposit <CshDpst>	[0..*]	±		218
	CardTransaction <CardTx>	[0..1]	±		219
	AdditionalTransactionInformation <AddtlTxlnf>	[0..1]	Text		222
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C21	222

### 6.1.9.2.1 References <Refs>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides the identification of the underlying transaction.

**References <Refs>** contains the following **TransactionReferences6** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		192
	AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		192
	PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInflId>	[0..1]	Text		192
	InstructionIdentification <InstrId>	[0..1]	Text		193
	EndToEndIdentification <EndToEndId>	[0..1]	Text		193
	UETR <UETR>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		193
	TransactionIdentification <TxId>	[0..1]	Text		193
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		193
	ChequeNumber <ChqNb>	[0..1]	Text		194
	ClearingSystemReference <ClrSysRef>	[0..1]	Text		194
	AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		194
	AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		194
	MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		194
	ProcessingIdentification <PrcgId>	[0..1]	Text		194
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			194
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		195
	Reference <Ref>	[1..1]	Text		195

#### 6.1.9.2.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the instructing party of the underlying message.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 372

#### 6.1.9.2.1.2 AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique reference, as assigned by the account servicing institution, to unambiguously identify the instruction.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 372

#### 6.1.9.2.1.3 PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInflId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by a sending party, to unambiguously identify the payment information group within the message.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.9.2.1.4 InstructionIdentification <InstrId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by an instructing party for an instructed party, to unambiguously identify the instruction.

*Usage:* The instruction identification is a point to point reference that can be used between the instructing party and the instructed party to refer to the individual instruction. It can be included in several messages related to the instruction.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.9.2.1.5 EndToEndIdentification <EndToEndId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the initiating party, to unambiguously identify the transaction. This identification is passed on, unchanged, throughout the entire end-to-end chain.

*Usage:* The end-to-end identification can be used for reconciliation or to link tasks relating to the transaction. It can be included in several messages related to the transaction.

*Usage:* In case there are technical limitations to pass on multiple references, the end-to-end identification must be passed on throughout the entire end-to-end chain.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.9.2.1.6 UETR <UETR>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Universally unique identifier to provide an end-to-end reference of a payment transaction.

*Datatype:* ["UUIDv4Identifier" on page 368](#)

#### 6.1.9.2.1.7 TransactionIdentification <TxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the first instructing agent, to unambiguously identify the transaction that is passed on, unchanged, throughout the entire interbank chain.

*Usage:* The transaction identification can be used for reconciliation, tracking or to link tasks relating to the transaction on the interbank level.

*Usage:* The instructing agent has to make sure that the transaction identification is unique for a pre-agreed period.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.9.2.1.8 MandatetIdentification <MndtId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously identify the mandate.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

**6.1.9.2.1.9 ChequeNumber <ChqNb>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identifier for a cheque as assigned by the agent.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

**6.1.9.2.1.10 ClearingSystemReference <ClrSysRef>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique reference, as assigned by a clearing system, to unambiguously identify the instruction.

*Usage:* In case there are technical limitations to pass on multiple references, the end-to-end identification must be passed on throughout the entire end-to-end chain.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

**6.1.9.2.1.11 AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the securities transaction as known by the securities account owner (or the instructing party managing the account).

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

**6.1.9.2.1.12 AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the securities transaction as known by the securities account servicer.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

**6.1.9.2.1.13 MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a securities transaction assigned by a market infrastructure other than a central securities depository, for example, Target2-Securities.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

**6.1.9.2.1.14 ProcessingIdentification <PrcgId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the securities transaction assigned by the processor of the instruction other than the securities account owner, the securities account servicer and the market infrastructure.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

**6.1.9.2.1.15 Proprietary <Prtry>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Proprietary reference related to the underlying transaction.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following **ProprietaryReference1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		195
	Reference <Ref>	[1..1]	Text		195

#### 6.1.9.2.1.15.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the type of reference reported.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.9.2.1.15.2 Reference <Ref>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary reference specification related to the underlying transaction.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.9.2.2 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money in the cash transaction.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344](#)

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.9.2.3 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the transaction is a credit or a debit transaction.

*Datatype:* ["CreditDebitCode" on page 350](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

#### 6.1.9.2.4 AmountDetails <AmtDtls>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides detailed information on the original amount.

*Usage:* This component (on transaction level) should be used in case booking is for a single transaction and the original amount is different from the entry amount. It can also be used in case individual original amounts are provided in case of a batch or aggregate booking.

**AmountDetails <AmtDtls>** contains the following elements (see "AmountAndCurrencyExchange3" on page 121 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InstructedAmount <InstdAmt>	[0..1]			123
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	124
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			124
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	124
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	125
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	125
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		125
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		125
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		126
	TransactionAmount <TxAmt>	[0..1]			126
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	126
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			126
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	127
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	127
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	127
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		128
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		128
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		128
	CounterValueAmount <CntrValAmt>	[0..1]			128
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	129
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			129
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	130
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	130
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	130
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		131
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		131
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		131
	AnnouncedPostingAmount <AnncdPstngAmt>	[0..1]			131
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	132
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			132

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	133
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	133
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	133
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		134
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		134
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		134
	ProprietaryAmount <PrtryAmt>	[0..*]			134
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		135
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	135
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			135
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	136
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	136
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	136
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		137
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		137
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		137

### 6.1.9.2.5 Availability <Avlbt>

Presence: [0..\*]

**Definition:** Indicates when the booked amount of money will become available, that is can be accessed and starts generating interest.

**Usage:** This type of information is used in the US and is linked to particular instruments such as cheques.

**Example:** When a cheque is deposited, it will be booked on the deposit day, but the amount of money will only be accessible as of the indicated availability day (according to national banking regulations).

**Availability <Avlbt>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAvailability1](#)" on page 187 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			187
{Or}	NumberOfDays <NbOfDays>	[1..1]	Text		187
Or}	ActualDate <ActlDt>	[1..1]	Date		187
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	188
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		188

### 6.1.9.2.6 BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to fully identify the type of underlying transaction resulting in an entry.

*Impacted by:* C10 "DomainOrProprietaryRule", C11 "FamilyAndSubFamilyRule"

**BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>** contains the following elements (see "BankTransactionCodeStructure4" on page 141 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Domain <Domn>	[0..1]	±		142
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..1]			142
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	Text		142
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		142

#### Constraints

- **DomainOrProprietaryRule**

Either Proprietary or Domain or both must be present.

Following Must be True  
 /Domain Must be present  
 Or      /Proprietary Must be present

- **FamilyAndSubFamilyRule**

If a specific (non-generic) Family code is not present, then a specific (non-generic) SubFamily code is not allowed.

### 6.1.9.2.7 Charges <Chrgs>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides information on the charges, pre-advised or included in the entry amount.

*Usage:* This component (on transaction level) can be used in case the booking is for a single transaction, and charges are included in the entry amount. It can also be used in case individual charge amounts are applied to individual transactions in case of a batch or aggregate amount booking.

**Charges <Chrgs>** contains the following elements (see "Charges6" on page 228 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalChargesAndTaxAmount <TtlChrgsAndTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	228
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]	±		228

### 6.1.9.2.8 Interest <Intrst>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details of the interest amount included in the entry amount.

Usage: This component (on transaction level) can be used if the booking is for a single transaction, and interest amount is included in the entry amount. It can also be used if individual interest amounts are applied to individual transactions in the case of a batch or aggregate amount booking.

**Interest <Intrst>** contains the following elements (see "[TransactionInterest4](#)" on page 254 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalInterestAndTaxAmount < <i>TtlIntrstAndTaxAmt</i> >	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	255
	Record < <i>Rcrd</i> >	[0..*]			256
	Amount < <i>Amt</i> >	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	257
	CreditDebitIndicator < <i>CdtDbtInd</i> >	[1..1]	CodeSet		258
	Type < <i>Tp</i> >	[0..1]			258
{Or}	Code < <i>Cd</i> >	[1..1]	CodeSet		258
Or}	Proprietary < <i>Prtry</i> >	[1..1]	Text		258
	Rate < <i>Rate</i> >	[0..1]			259
	Type < <i>Tp</i> >	[1..1]	±		259
	ValidityRange < <i>VldtyRg</i> >	[0..1]			259
	Amount < <i>Amt</i> >	[1..1]			260
{Or}	FromAmount < <i>FrAmt</i> >	[1..1]	±		260
Or	ToAmount < <i>ToAmt</i> >	[1..1]	±		261
Or	FromToAmount < <i>FrToAmt</i> >	[1..1]			261
	FromAmount < <i>FrAmt</i> >	[1..1]	±		261
	ToAmount < <i>ToAmt</i> >	[1..1]	±		261
Or	EqualAmount < <i>EQAmt</i> >	[1..1]	Amount		262
Or}	NotEqualAmount < <i>NEQAmt</i> >	[1..1]	Amount		262
	CreditDebitIndicator < <i>CdtDbtInd</i> >	[0..1]	CodeSet		262
	Currency < <i>Ccy</i> >	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	262
	FromToDate < <i>FrToDt</i> >	[0..1]	±		262
	Reason < <i>Rsn</i> >	[0..1]	Text		263
	Tax < <i>Tax</i> >	[0..1]			263
	Identification < <i>Id</i> >	[0..1]	Text		263
	Rate < <i>Rate</i> >	[0..1]	Rate		263
	Amount < <i>Amt</i> >	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	263

#### 6.1.9.2.9 RelatedParties <RltdPties>

Presence: [0..1]

**Definition:** Set of elements used to identify the parties related to the underlying transaction.

**RelatedParties <RltdPties>** contains the following **TransactionParties6** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InitiatingParty <InitgPty>	[0..1]	±		201
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		201
	DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		201
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		202
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		202
	CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		202
	UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		203
	TradingParty <TradgPty>	[0..1]	±		203
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			203
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		204
	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		204

#### 6.1.9.2.9.1 InitiatingParty <InitgPty>

**Presence:** [0..1]

**Definition:** Party that initiated the payment that is reported in the entry.

**InitiatingParty <InitgPty>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party40Choice](#)" on page 285 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		286
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		286

#### 6.1.9.2.9.2 Debtor <Dbtr>

**Presence:** [0..1]

**Definition:** Party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

**Debtor <Dbtr>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party40Choice](#)" on page 285 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		286
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		286

#### 6.1.9.2.9.3 DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>

**Presence:** [0..1]

**Definition:** Unambiguous identification of the account of the debtor.

**DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount38](#)" on page 117 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification </d>	[1..1]	±		118
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		118
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	118
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		119
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		119

#### 6.1.9.2.9.4 UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

**UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party40Choice](#)" on page 285 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		286
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		286

#### 6.1.9.2.9.5 Creditor <Cdtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party to which an amount of money is due.

**Creditor <Cdtr>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party40Choice](#)" on page 285 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		286
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		286

#### 6.1.9.2.9.6 CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account of the creditor to which a credit entry has been posted as a result of the payment transaction.

**CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount38](#)" on page 117 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification </d>	[1..1]	±		118
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		118
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	118
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		119
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		119

#### 6.1.9.2.9.7 UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Ultimate party to which an amount of money is due.

**UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party40Choice](#)" on page 285 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		286
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		286

#### 6.1.9.2.9.8 TradingParty <TradgPty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that plays an active role in planning and executing the transactions that create or liquidate investments of the investors assets, or that move the investor's assets from one investment to another. A trading party is a trade instructor, an investment decision-maker, a post trade administrator, or a trader. In the context of treasury, it is the party that negotiates and executes the treasury transaction.

**TradingParty <TradgPty>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party40Choice](#)" on page 285 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		286
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		286

#### 6.1.9.2.9.9 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Proprietary party related to the underlying transaction.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following **ProprietaryParty5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		204
	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		204

#### 6.1.9.2.9.9.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of proprietary party.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.9.2.9.9.2 Party <Pty>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary party.

**Party <Pty>** contains one of the following elements (see ["Party40Choice" on page 285](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		286
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		286

#### 6.1.9.2.10 RelatedAgents <RltdAgts>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify the agents related to the underlying transaction.

**RelatedAgents <RltdAgt>** contains the following **TransactionAgents5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		205
	InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		205
	DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		206
	CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		206
	IntermediaryAgent1 <IntrmyAgt1>	[0..1]	±		206
	IntermediaryAgent2 <IntrmyAgt2>	[0..1]	±		206
	IntermediaryAgent3 <IntrmyAgt3>	[0..1]	±		207
	ReceivingAgent <RcvgAgt>	[0..1]	±		207
	DeliveringAgent <DlvgAgt>	[0..1]	±		207
	IssuingAgent <IssgAgt>	[0..1]	±		208
	SettlementPlace <SttlmPlc>	[0..1]	±		208
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			208
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		208
	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		209

#### 6.1.9.2.10.1 InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent that instructs the next party in the chain to carry out the (set of) instruction(s).

**InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 242 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		242
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		243

#### 6.1.9.2.10.2 InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent that is instructed by the previous party in the chain to carry out the (set of) instruction(s).

**InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 242 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		242
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		243

### 6.1.9.2.10.3 DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Financial institution servicing an account for the debtor.

**DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page [242](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification < <i>FinInstnId</i> >	[1..1]	±		<a href="#">242</a>
	BranchIdentification < <i>BrnchId</i> >	[0..1]	±		<a href="#">243</a>

### 6.1.9.2.10.4 CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Financial institution servicing an account for the creditor.

**CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page [242](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification < <i>FinInstnId</i> >	[1..1]	±		<a href="#">242</a>
	BranchIdentification < <i>BrnchId</i> >	[0..1]	±		<a href="#">243</a>

### 6.1.9.2.10.5 IntermediaryAgent1 <IntrmyAgt1>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent between the debtor's agent and the creditor's agent.

*Usage:* If more than one intermediary agent is present, then IntermediaryAgent1 identifies the agent between the DebtorAgent and the IntermediaryAgent2.

**IntermediaryAgent1 <IntrmyAgt1>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page [242](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification < <i>FinInstnId</i> >	[1..1]	±		<a href="#">242</a>
	BranchIdentification < <i>BrnchId</i> >	[0..1]	±		<a href="#">243</a>

### 6.1.9.2.10.6 IntermediaryAgent2 <IntrmyAgt2>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent between the debtor's agent and the creditor's agent.

*Usage:* If more than two intermediary agents are present, then IntermediaryAgent2 identifies the agent between the IntermediaryAgent1 and the IntermediaryAgent3.

**IntermediaryAgent2 <IntrmyAgt2>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 242 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		242
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		243

#### 6.1.9.2.10.7 IntermediaryAgent3 <IntrmyAgt3>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent between the debtor's agent and the creditor's agent.

*Usage:* If IntermediaryAgent3 is present, then it identifies the agent between the IntermediaryAgent 2 and the CreditorAgent.

**IntermediaryAgent3 <IntrmyAgt3>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 242 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		242
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		243

#### 6.1.9.2.10.8 ReceivingAgent <RcvgAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that receives securities from the delivering agent at the place of settlement, such as central securities depository.

Can also be used in the context of treasury operations.

**ReceivingAgent <RcvgAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 242 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		242
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		243

#### 6.1.9.2.10.9 DeliveringAgent <DivrgAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that delivers securities to the receiving agent at the place of settlement, such as a central securities depository.

Can also be used in the context of treasury operations.

**DeliveringAgent <DlvrgAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 242 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		242
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		243

#### 6.1.9.2.10.10 IssuingAgent <IssgAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Legal entity that has the right to issue securities.

**IssuingAgent <IssgAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 242 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		242
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		243

#### 6.1.9.2.10.11 SettlementPlace <SttlmPlc>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Place where settlement of the securities takes place.

*Usage:* This is typed by a financial institution identification as this is the standard way to identify a securities settlement agent/central system.

**SettlementPlace <SttlmPlc>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 242 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		242
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		243

#### 6.1.9.2.10.12 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Proprietary agent related to the underlying transaction.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following **ProprietaryAgent4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		208
	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		209

#### 6.1.9.2.10.12.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of proprietary agent.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.9.2.10.12.2 Agent <Agt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Organisation established primarily to provide financial services.

**Agent <Agt>** contains the following elements (see ["BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 242](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		242
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		243

#### 6.1.9.2.11 LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* User community specific instrument.

*Usage:* This element is used to specify a local instrument, local clearing option and/or further qualify the service or service level.

**LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>** contains one of the following **LocalInstrument2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		209
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		209

#### 6.1.9.2.11.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the local instrument, as published in an external local instrument code list.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalLocalInstrument1Code" on page 356](#)

#### 6.1.9.2.11.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the local instrument, as a proprietary code.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.9.2.12 Purpose <Purp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Underlying reason for the payment transaction.

*Usage:* Purpose is used by the end-customers, that is initiating party, (ultimate) debtor, (ultimate) creditor to provide information concerning the nature of the payment. Purpose is a content element, which is not used for processing by any of the agents involved in the payment chain.

**Purpose <Purp>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Purpose2Choice](#)" on page 253 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		253
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		253

#### 6.1.9.2.13 RelatedRemittanceInformation <RltdRmtInf>

*Presence:* [0..10]

*Definition:* Provides information related to the handling of the remittance information by any of the agents in the transaction processing chain.

**RelatedRemittanceInformation <RltdRmtInf>** contains the following elements (see "[RemittanceLocation7](#)" on page 322 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	RemittanceIdentification <RmtId>	[0..1]	Text		322
	RemittanceLocationDetails <RmtLctnDtls>	[0..*]	±		322

#### 6.1.9.2.14 RemittanceInformation <RmtInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Structured information that enables the matching, that is reconciliation, of a payment with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an account receivable system.

**RemittanceInformation <RmtInf>** contains the following elements (see "[RemittanceInformation16](#)" on page 323 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Unstructured <Ustrd>	[0..*]	Text		323
	Structured <Strd>	[0..*]	±		323

#### 6.1.9.2.15 RelatedDates <RltdDts>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify the dates related to the underlying transactions.

**RelatedDates <RltdDts>** contains the following **TransactionDates3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AcceptanceDateTime <AccptncDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		211
	TradeActivityContractualSettlementDate <TradActvtyCtrctlSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		211
	TradeDate <TradDt>	[0..1]	Date		211
	InterbankSettlementDate <IntrBkSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		211
	StartDate <StartDt>	[0..1]	Date		211
	EndDate <EndDt>	[0..1]	Date		212
	TransactionDateTime <TxDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		212
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			212
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		212
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	±		212

#### 6.1.9.2.15.1 AcceptanceDateTime <AccptncDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Point in time when the payment order from the initiating party meets the processing conditions of the account servicing agent. This means that the account servicing agent has received the payment order and has applied checks such as authorisation, availability of funds.

*Datatype:* ["ISODateTime" on page 366](#)

#### 6.1.9.2.15.2 TradeActivityContractualSettlementDate <TradActvtyCtrctlSttlmDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies when an amount of money should have contractually been credited or debited the account versus when the amount of money was actually settled (debited/credited) on the cash account.

*Datatype:* ["ISODate" on page 366](#)

#### 6.1.9.2.15.3 TradeDate <TradDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date on which the trade was executed.

*Datatype:* ["ISODate" on page 366](#)

#### 6.1.9.2.15.4 InterbankSettlementDate <IntrBkSttlmDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date on which the amount of money ceases to be available to the agent that owes it and when the amount of money becomes available to the agent to which it is due.

*Datatype:* ["ISODate" on page 366](#)

#### 6.1.9.2.15.5 StartDate <StartDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Start date of the underlying transaction, such as a treasury transaction, an investment plan.

*Datatype:* ["ISODate" on page 366](#)

#### 6.1.9.2.15.6 EndDate <EndDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* End date of the underlying transaction, such as a treasury transaction, an investment plan.

*Datatype:* ["ISODate" on page 366](#)

#### 6.1.9.2.15.7 TransactionDateTime <TxDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time of the underlying transaction.

*Datatype:* ["ISODateTime" on page 366](#)

#### 6.1.9.2.15.8 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Proprietary date related to the underlying transaction.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following **ProprietaryDate3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		212
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	±		212

#### 6.1.9.2.15.8.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of date.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.9.2.15.8.2 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date in ISO format.

**Date <Dt>** contains one of the following elements (see ["DateAndDateTime2Choice" on page 234](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		234
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		234

#### 6.1.9.2.16 RelatedPrice <RltdPric>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify the price information related to the underlying transaction.

**RelatedPrice <RltdPric>** contains one of the following **TransactionPrice4Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	DealPrice <DealPric>	[1..1]	±		213
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..*]			213
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		213
	Price <Pric>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	213

#### 6.1.9.2.16.1 DealPrice <DealPric>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the price of the traded financial instrument.

This is the deal price of the individual trade transaction.

If there is only one trade transaction for the execution of the trade, then the deal price could equal the executed trade price (unless, for example, the price includes commissions or rounding, or some other factor has been applied to the deal price or the executed trade price, or both).

**DealPrice <DealPric>** contains the following elements (see "[Price7](#)" on page 296 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		296
	Value <Val>	[1..1]	±		296

#### 6.1.9.2.16.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Proprietary price specification related to the underlying transaction.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following **ProprietaryPrice2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		213
	Price <Pric>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	213

#### 6.1.9.2.16.2.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of price.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

#### 6.1.9.2.16.2.2 Price <Pric>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary price specification related to the underlying transaction.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.9.2.17 RelatedQuantities <RItdQties>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify the related quantities, such as securities, in the underlying transaction.

**RelatedQuantities <RItdQties>** contains one of the following **TransactionQuantities3Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Quantity <Qty>	[1..1]	±		214
Or	OriginalAndCurrentFaceAmount <OrgnlAndCurFaceAmt>	[1..1]	±		214
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]			215
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		215
	Quantity <Qty>	[1..1]	Text		215

##### 6.1.9.2.17.1 Quantity <Qty>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the quantity (such as securities) in the underlying transaction.

**Quantity <Qty>** contains one of the following elements (see "[FinancialInstrumentQuantity1Choice](#)" on page 246 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Unit <Unit>	[1..1]	Quantity		247
Or	FaceAmount <FaceAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		247
Or}	AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal>	[1..1]	Amount		247

##### 6.1.9.2.17.2 OriginalAndCurrentFaceAmount <OrgnlAndCurFaceAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Face amount and amortised value of security.

**OriginalAndCurrentFaceAmount <OrgnAndCurFaceAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[OriginalAndCurrentQuantities1](#)" on page 325 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FaceAmount <FaceAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		325
	AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal>	[1..1]	Amount		325

#### 6.1.9.2.17.3 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary quantities specification defined in the underlying transaction.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following **ProprietaryQuantity1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		215
	Quantity <Qty>	[1..1]	Text		215

#### 6.1.9.2.17.3.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the type of proprietary quantity reported.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

#### 6.1.9.2.17.3.2 Quantity <Qty>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the proprietary quantity in free format.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

#### 6.1.9.2.18 FinancialInstrumentIdentification <FinInstrmId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a security, as assigned under a formal or proprietary identification scheme.

*Impacted by:* [C8 "DescriptionPresenceRule"](#), [C9 "DescriptionUsageRule"](#), [C14 "ISINGuideline"](#), [C15 "ISINPresenceRule"](#), [C17 "OtherIdentificationPresenceRule"](#)

**FinancialInstrumentIdentification <FinInstrmId>** contains the following elements (see "SecurityIdentification19" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ISIN </SIN>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		245
	OtherIdentification <OthrId>	[0..*]			245
	Identification </d>	[1..1]	Text		246
	Suffix <Sfx>	[0..1]	Text		246
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		246
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		246

### Constraints

- **DescriptionPresenceRule**

If Description is not present then either ISIN or at least one occurrence of OtherIdentification must be present.

On Condition  
     /Description is absent  
     Following Must be True  
         /ISIN Must be present  
     Or     /OtherIdentification[\*] Must be present

- **DescriptionUsageRule**

Description must be used alone as the last resort.

- **ISINGuideline**

When an ISIN code exists, it is strongly recommended that the ISIN be used.

- **ISINPresenceRule**

If ISIN is not present then either Description or at least one occurrence of OtherIdentification must be present.

On Condition  
     /ISIN is absent  
     Following Must be True  
         /OtherIdentification[\*] Must be present  
     Or     /Description Must be present

- **OtherIdentificationPresenceRule**

If OtherIdentification is not present then either ISIN or Description must be present.

On Condition  
     /OtherIdentification[\*] is absent  
     Following Must be True  
         /ISIN Must be present  
     Or     /Description Must be present

### 6.1.9.2.19 Tax <Tax>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the tax.

**Tax <Tax>** contains the following elements (see "[TaxInformation8](#)" on page 332 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		333
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		333
	AdministrationZone <AdmstnZone>	[0..1]	Text		333
	ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		333
	Method <Mtd>	[0..1]	Text		333
	TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	334
	TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	334
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		334
	SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		334
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]	±		335

### 6.1.9.2.20 ReturnInformation <Rtrlnf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides the return information.

*Impacted by:* [C19 "ReturnReasonRule"](#)

**ReturnInformation <Rtrlnf>** contains the following elements (see "[PaymentReturnReason5](#)" on page 326 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalBankTransactionCode <OrgnlBkTxCd>	[0..1]	±	C10, C11	326
	Originator <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		327
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]			327
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		327
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		327
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		327

#### Constraints

- **ReturnReasonRule**

If Reason/Code is equal to NARR, then AdditionalInformation must be present.

On Condition  
     /Reason/Code is equal to value 'NARR'  
     And     /Reason is present  
     And     /Reason/Code is present

Following Must be True  
 /AdditionalInformation[\*] Must be present

### 6.1.9.2.21 CorporateAction <CorpActn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify the underlying corporate action.

**CorporateAction <CorpActn>** contains the following **CorporateAction9** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EventType <EvtTp>	[1..1]	Text		218
	EventIdentification <EvtId>	[1..1]	Text		218

#### 6.1.9.2.21.1 EventType <EvtTp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of corporate action event, in a free-text format.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.9.2.21.2 EventIdentification <EvtId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a corporate action assigned by an official central body/entity within a given market.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

### 6.1.9.2.22 SafekeepingAccount <SfkpgAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Safekeeping or investment account. A safekeeping account is an account on which a securities entry is made. An investment account is an account between an investor(s) and a fund manager or a fund. The account can contain holdings in any investment fund or investment fund class managed (or distributed) by the fund manager, within the same fund family.

**SafekeepingAccount <SfkpgAcct>** contains the following elements (see ["SecuritiesAccount19" on page 119](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification </d>	[1..1]	Text		119
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		120
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		120

### 6.1.9.2.23 CashDeposit <CshDpst>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides the details of a cash deposit for an amount of money in cash notes and/or coins.

**CashDeposit <CshDpst>** contains the following elements (see "[CashDeposit1](#)" on page 186 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NoteDenomination <NoteDnmtn>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	186
	NumberOfNotes <NbOfNotes>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	186

#### 6.1.9.2.24 CardTransaction <CardTx>

Presence: [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides the data related to the card (number, scheme), terminal (number, identification) and transactional data used to uniquely identify a card transaction.

**CardTransaction <CardTx>** contains the following elements (see "CardTransaction17" on page 158 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Card <Card>	[0..1]			161
	PlainCardData <PlainCardData>	[0..1]			162
	PAN <PAN>	[1..1]	Text		163
	CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		163
	EffectiveDate <FctvDt>	[0..1]	YearMonth		163
	ExpiryDate <XpryDt>	[1..1]	YearMonth		163
	ServiceCode <SvcCd>	[0..1]	Text		163
	TrackData <TrckData>	[0..*]			164
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		164
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		164
	CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>	[0..1]			164
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		164
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		165
	CardCountryCode <CardCtryCd>	[0..1]	Text		165
	CardBrand <CardBrnd>	[0..1]	±		165
	AdditionalCardData <AddtlCardData>	[0..1]	Text		165
	POI <POI>	[0..1]			165
	Identification </d>	[1..1]	±		166
	SystemName <SysNm>	[0..1]	Text		167
	GroupIdentification <Grpld>	[0..1]	Text		167
	Capabilities <Cpbilities>	[0..1]			167
	CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpbilities>	[0..*]	CodeSet		167
	CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrdhldrVrfctnCpbilities>	[0..*]	CodeSet		168
	OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpbilities>	[0..1]	CodeSet		168
	DisplayCapabilities <DispCpbilities>	[0..*]			169
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		169
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		169
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		169
	PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>	[0..1]	Text		169
	Component <Cmpnt>	[0..*]			169

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	POIComponentType <POICmpntTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		170
	ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrlId>	[0..1]	Text		170
	Model <Mdl>	[0..1]	Text		170
	VersionNumber <VrsnNb>	[0..1]	Text		170
	SerialNumber <SrlNb>	[0..1]	Text		171
	ApprovalNumber <ApprvlNb>	[0..*]	Text		171
	Transaction <Tx>	[0..1]			171
{Or}	Aggregated <Aggtd>	[1..1]			173
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		173
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		174
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>	[0..1]	Text		174
	SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>	[0..1]			174
	FirstTransaction <FrstTx>	[0..1]	Text		174
	LastTransaction <LastTx>	[0..1]	Text		174
	TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>	[0..1]	±		175
Or}	Individual <Indv>	[1..1]			175
	ICCRelatedData <ICCRltdData>	[0..1]	Text		177
	PaymentContext <PmtCntxt>	[0..1]			177
	CardPresent <CardPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		177
	CardholderPresent <CrdhldrPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		177
	OnLineContext <OnLineCntxt>	[0..1]	Indicator		178
	AttendanceContext <AttndncCntxt>	[0..1]	CodeSet		178
	TransactionEnvironment <TxEnvrt>	[0..1]	CodeSet		178
	TransactionChannel <TxChnl>	[0..1]	CodeSet		178
	AttendantMessageCapable <AttndntMsgCpbl>	[0..1]	Indicator		179
	AttendantLanguage <AttndntLang>	[0..1]	CodeSet		179
	CardDataEntryMode <CardDataNtryMd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		179
	FallbackIndicator <FlbkInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		179
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[0..1]			180
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		180
	AuthenticationEntity <AuthntcnNtty>	[1..1]	CodeSet		180

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		181
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		181
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>	[0..1]	Text		181
	SaleReferenceNumber <SaleRefNb>	[0..1]	Text		182
	RePresentmentReason <RePresntmntRsn>	[0..1]	CodeSet		182
	SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		182
	TransactionIdentification <TxId>	[0..1]	±		182
	Product <Pdct>	[0..1]			182
	ProductCode <PdctCd>	[1..1]	Text		183
	UnitOfMeasure <UnitOfMeasr>	[0..1]	CodeSet		183
	ProductQuantity <PdctQty>	[0..1]	Quantity		184
	UnitPrice <UnitPric>	[0..1]	Amount		184
	ProductAmount <PdctAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		184
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		185
	AdditionalProductInformation <AddtlPdctInfr>	[0..1]	Text		185
	ValidationDate <VldtnDt>	[0..1]	Date		185
	ValidationSequenceNumber <VldtnSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		185
	PrePaidAccount <PrePdAcct>	[0..1]	±		185

#### 6.1.9.2.25 AdditionalTransactionInformation <AddtlTxlnf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Further details of the transaction.

Datatype: "Max500Text" on page 373

#### 6.1.9.2.26 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

Presence: [0..\*]

Definition: Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

Impacted by: C21 "SupplementaryDataRule"

SupplementaryData <SplmtryData> contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 279 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		279
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		279

## Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

### 6.1.9.3 EntryDetails9

*Definition:* Identifies the underlying transaction(s) and/or batched entries.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Batch <Btch>	[0..1]			223
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		223
	PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInfld>	[0..1]	Text		223
	NumberOfTransactions <NbOfTxns>	[0..1]	Text		224
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	224
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		224
	TransactionDetails <TxDtls>	[0..*]	±		224

#### 6.1.9.3.1 Batch <Btch>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on batched transactions.

**Batch <Btch>** contains the following **BatchInformation2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		223
	PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInfld>	[0..1]	Text		223
	NumberOfTransactions <NbOfTxns>	[0..1]	Text		224
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	224
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		224

##### 6.1.9.3.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the sending party, to unambiguously identify the batch of transactions.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

##### 6.1.9.3.1.2 PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInfld>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by a sending party, to unambiguously identify the payment information group within the message.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.9.3.1.3 NumberOfTransactions <NbOfTxss>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number of individual transactions included in the batch.

*Datatype:* ["Max15NumericText" on page 371](#)

#### 6.1.9.3.1.4 TotalAmount <TtlAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total amount of money reported in the batch entry.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344](#)

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.9.3.1.5 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the batch entry is a credit or a debit entry.

*Datatype:* ["CreditDebitCode" on page 350](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

#### 6.1.9.3.2 TransactionDetails <TxDtls>

*Presence:* [0.. \*]

*Definition:* Provides information on the underlying transaction(s).

**TransactionDetails <TxDtls>** contains the following elements (see "EntryTransaction10" on page 188 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	References <Refs>	[0..1]			192
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		192
	AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		192
	PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInfld>	[0..1]	Text		192
	InstructionIdentification <InstrId>	[0..1]	Text		193
	EndToEndIdentification <EndToEndId>	[0..1]	Text		193
	UETR <UETR>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		193
	TransactionIdentification <TxId>	[0..1]	Text		193
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		193
	ChequeNumber <ChqNb>	[0..1]	Text		194
	ClearingSystemReference <ClrSysRef>	[0..1]	Text		194
	AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		194
	AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		194
	MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		194
	ProcessingIdentification <PrcgId>	[0..1]	Text		194
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			194
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		195
	Reference <Ref>	[1..1]	Text		195
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	195
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		195
	AmountDetails <AmtDtls>	[0..1]	±		196
	Availability <Avlblty>	[0..*]	±		198
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[0..1]	±	C10, C11	199
	Charges <Chrgs>	[0..1]	±		199
	Interest <Intrst>	[0..1]	±		199
	RelatedParties <RltdPties>	[0..1]			200
	InitiatingParty <InitgPty>	[0..1]	±		201
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		201

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DebtorAccount < <i>DbtrAcct</i> >	[0..1]	±		201
	UltimateDebtor < <i>UltmtDbtr</i> >	[0..1]	±		202
	Creditor < <i>Cdtr</i> >	[0..1]	±		202
	CreditorAccount < <i>CdtrAcct</i> >	[0..1]	±		202
	UltimateCreditor < <i>UltmtCdtr</i> >	[0..1]	±		203
	TradingParty < <i>TradgPty</i> >	[0..1]	±		203
	Proprietary < <i>Prtry</i> >	[0..*]			203
	Type < <i>Tp</i> >	[1..1]	Text		204
	Party < <i>Pty</i> >	[1..1]	±		204
	RelatedAgents < <i>RltdAgts</i> >	[0..1]			204
	InstructingAgent < <i>InstgAgt</i> >	[0..1]	±		205
	InstructedAgent < <i>InstdAgt</i> >	[0..1]	±		205
	DebtorAgent < <i>DbtrAgt</i> >	[0..1]	±		206
	CreditorAgent < <i>CdtrAgt</i> >	[0..1]	±		206
	IntermediaryAgent1 < <i>IntrmyAgt1</i> >	[0..1]	±		206
	IntermediaryAgent2 < <i>IntrmyAgt2</i> >	[0..1]	±		206
	IntermediaryAgent3 < <i>IntrmyAgt3</i> >	[0..1]	±		207
	ReceivingAgent < <i>RcvrgAgt</i> >	[0..1]	±		207
	DeliveringAgent < <i>DlvrgAgt</i> >	[0..1]	±		207
	IssuingAgent < <i>IssgAgt</i> >	[0..1]	±		208
	SettlementPlace < <i>SttlmPlc</i> >	[0..1]	±		208
	Proprietary < <i>Prtry</i> >	[0..*]			208
	Type < <i>Tp</i> >	[1..1]	Text		208
	Agent < <i>Agt</i> >	[1..1]	±		209
	LocalInstrument < <i>LclInstrm</i> >	[0..1]			209
{Or}	Code < <i>Cd</i> >	[1..1]	CodeSet		209
Or}	Proprietary < <i>Prtry</i> >	[1..1]	Text		209
	Purpose < <i>Purp</i> >	[0..1]	±		209
	RelatedRemittanceInformation < <i>RltdRmtlnf</i> >	[0..10]	±		210
	RemittanceInformation < <i>Rmtlnf</i> >	[0..1]	±		210
	RelatedDates < <i>RltdDts</i> >	[0..1]			210

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AcceptanceDateTime <AccptncDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		211
	TradeActivityContractualSettlementDate <TradActvtyCrtctSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		211
	TradeDate <TradDt>	[0..1]	Date		211
	InterbankSettlementDate <IntrBkSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		211
	StartDate <StartDt>	[0..1]	Date		211
	EndDate <EndDt>	[0..1]	Date		212
	TransactionDateTime <TxDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		212
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			212
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		212
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	±		212
	RelatedPrice <RltdPric>	[0..1]			212
{Or}	DealPrice <DealPric>	[1..1]	±		213
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..*]			213
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		213
	Price <Pric>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	213
	RelatedQuantities <RltdQties>	[0..*]			214
{Or}	Quantity <Qty>	[1..1]	±		214
Or	OriginalAndCurrentFaceAmount <OrgnlAndCurFaceAmt>	[1..1]	±		214
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]			215
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		215
	Quantity <Qty>	[1..1]	Text		215
	FinancialInstrumentIdentification <FinInstrmId>	[0..1]	±	C8, C9, C14, C15, C17	215
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]	±		216
	ReturnInformation <Rtrlnf>	[0..1]	±	C19	217
	CorporateAction <CorpActn>	[0..1]			218
	EventType <EvtTp>	[1..1]	Text		218
	EventIdentification <EvtId>	[1..1]	Text		218
	SafekeepingAccount <SfkpgAcct>	[0..1]	±		218
	CashDeposit <CshDpst>	[0..*]	±		218

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CardTransaction <CardTx>	[0..1]	±		219
	AdditionalTransactionInformation <AddtlTxInfr>	[0..1]	Text		222
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C21	222

## 6.1.10 Charge

### 6.1.10.1 Charges6

*Definition:* Provides further details on the charges related to the payment transaction.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalChargesAndTaxAmount <TtlChrgsAndTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	228
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]	±		228

#### 6.1.10.1.1 TotalChargesAndTaxAmount <TtlChrgsAndTaxAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total of all charges and taxes applied to the entry.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344](#)

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.10.1.2 Record <Rcrd>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides details of the individual charges record.

**Record <Rcrd>** contains the following elements (see "ChargesRecord3" on page 229 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	230
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		230
	ChargeIncludedIndicator <ChrgInclInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		230
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			230
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		231
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		231
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		231
	Bearer  	[0..1]	CodeSet		231
	Agent <Agt>	[0..1]	±		232
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]			232
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		232
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		232
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	232

### 6.1.10.2 ChargesRecord3

*Definition:* Provides further individual record details on the charges related to the payment transaction.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	230
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		230
	ChargeIncludedIndicator <ChrgInclInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		230
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			230
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		231
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		231
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		231
	Bearer  	[0..1]	CodeSet		231
	Agent <Agt>	[0..1]	±		232
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]			232
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		232
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		232
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	232

### 6.1.10.2.1 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Transaction charges to be paid by the charge bearer.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344](#)

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### 6.1.10.2.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the charges amount is a credit or a debit amount.

*Usage:* A zero amount is considered to be a credit.

*Datatype:* ["CreditDebitCode" on page 350](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

### 6.1.10.2.3 ChargeIncludedIndicator <ChrgInclInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the charge should be included in the amount or is added as pre-advice.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see ["ChargeIncludedIndicator" on page 368](#)):

- *Meaning When True:* Included
- *Meaning When False:* Pre-advised

### 6.1.10.2.4 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of charge.

Type **<Tp>** contains one of the following **ChargeType3Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Code < <i>Cd</i> >	[1..1]	CodeSet		231
Or}	Proprietary < <i>Prtry</i> >	[1..1]	±		231

#### 6.1.10.2.4.1 Code <*Cd*>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Charge type, in a coded form.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalChargeType1Code" on page 353](#)

#### 6.1.10.2.4.2 Proprietary <*Prtry*>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of charge in a proprietary form, as defined by the issuer.

**Proprietary <*Prtry*>** contains the following elements (see ["GenericIdentification3" on page 250](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification < <i>Id</i> >	[1..1]	Text		250
	Issuer < <i>lssr</i> >	[0..1]	Text		250

#### 6.1.10.2.5 Rate <*Rate*>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Rate used to calculate the amount of the charge or fee.

*Datatype:* ["PercentageRate" on page 370](#)

#### 6.1.10.2.6 Bearer <*Br*>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies which party/parties will bear the charges associated with the processing of the payment transaction.

*Datatype:* ["ChargeBearerType1Code" on page 348](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
DEBT	BorneByDebtor	All transaction charges are to be borne by the debtor.
CRED	BorneByCreditor	All transaction charges are to be borne by the creditor.
SHAR	Shared	In a credit transfer context, means that transaction charges on the sender side are to be borne by the debtor, transaction charges on the receiver side are to be borne by the creditor. In a direct debit context, means that transaction charges on the sender side are to be borne by the creditor,

CodeName	Name	Definition
		transaction charges on the receiver side are to be borne by the debtor.
SLEV	FollowingServiceLevel	Charges are to be applied following the rules agreed in the service level and/or scheme.

#### 6.1.10.2.7 Agent <Agt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent that takes the transaction charges or to which the transaction charges are due.

**Agent <Agt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 242 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification < <i>FinInstnId</i> >	[1..1]	±		242
	BranchIdentification < <i>BrnchId</i> >	[0..1]	±		243

#### 6.1.10.2.8 Tax <Tax>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the tax applied to charges.

**Tax <Tax>** contains the following **TaxCharges2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification < <i>Id</i> >	[0..1]	Text		232
	Rate < <i>Rate</i> >	[0..1]	Rate		232
	Amount < <i>Amt</i> >	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	232

##### 6.1.10.2.8.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique reference to unambiguously identify the nature of the tax levied, such as Value Added Tax (VAT).

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

##### 6.1.10.2.8.2 Rate <Rate>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Rate used to calculate the tax.

*Datatype:* "[PercentageRate](#)" on page 370

##### 6.1.10.2.8.3 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money resulting from the calculation of the tax.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344*

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

## 6.1.11 Date Period

### 6.1.11.1 DatePeriodDetails1

*Definition:* Range of time defined by a start date and an end date.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		233
	ToDate <ToDt>	[0..1]	Date		233

#### 6.1.11.1.1 FromDate <FrDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Start date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 366

#### 6.1.11.1.2 ToDate <ToDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* End date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 366

### 6.1.11.2 DatePeriod2

*Definition:* Range of time defined by a start date and an end date.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		233
	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		234

#### 6.1.11.2.1 FromDate <FrDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Start date of the range.

*Datatype:* ["ISODate" on page 366](#)

#### 6.1.11.2.2 ToDate <ToDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* End date of the range.

*Datatype:* ["ISODate" on page 366](#)

### 6.1.12 Date Time

#### 6.1.12.1 DateAndDateTime2Choice

*Definition:* Choice between a date or a date and time format.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		234
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		234

#### 6.1.12.1.1 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date.

*Datatype:* ["ISODate" on page 366](#)

#### 6.1.12.1.2 DateTime <DtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date and time.

*Datatype:* ["ISODateTime" on page 366](#)

### 6.1.13 Date Time Period

#### 6.1.13.1 DateTimePeriod1

*Definition:* Time span defined by a start date and time, and an end date and time.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDateTime <FrDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		234
	ToDateTime <ToDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		235

#### 6.1.13.1.1 FromDateTime <FrDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the period starts.

*Datatype:* ["ISODateTime" on page 366](#)

### 6.1.13.1.2 ToDateTime <ToDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the period ends.

*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 366

### 6.1.13.2 DateOrDateTimePeriod1Choice

*Definition:* Choice between a date or a date and time format for a period.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	±		235
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	±		235

#### 6.1.13.2.1 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Period expressed with dates.

**Date <Dt>** contains the following elements (see "[DatePeriod2](#)" on page 233 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		233
	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		234

#### 6.1.13.2.2 DateTime <DtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Period expressed a dates and times.

**DateTime <DtTm>** contains the following elements (see "[DateTimePeriod1](#)" on page 234 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDateTime <FrDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		234
	ToDateTime <ToDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		235

## 6.1.14 Document

### 6.1.14.1 CreditorReferenceInformation2

*Definition:* Reference information provided by the creditor to allow the identification of the underlying documents.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			236
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			236
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		236
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		237
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		237
	Reference <Ref>	[0..1]	Text		237

### 6.1.14.1.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of creditor reference.

Type <Tp> contains the following **CreditorReferenceType2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			236
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		236
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		237
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		237

### 6.1.14.1.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Coded or proprietary format creditor reference type.

CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry> contains one of the following **CreditorReferenceType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		236
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		237

### 6.1.14.1.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of creditor reference, in a coded form.

Datatype: "DocumentType3Code" on page 350

CodeName	Name	Definition
RADM	RemittanceAdviceMessage	Document is a remittance advice sent separately from the current transaction.
RPIN	RelatedPaymentInstruction	Document is a linked payment instruction to which the current payment

CodeName	Name	Definition
		instruction is related, for example, in a cover scenario.
FXDR	ForeignExchangeDealReference	Document is a pre-agreed or pre-arranged foreign exchange transaction to which the payment transaction refers.
DISP	DispatchAdvice	Document is a dispatch advice.
PUOR	PurchaseOrder	Document is a purchase order.
SCOR	StructuredCommunicationReference	Document is a structured communication reference provided by the creditor to identify the referred transaction.

#### 6.1.14.1.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Creditor reference type, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.14.1.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the credit reference type.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.14.1.2 Reference <Ref>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique reference, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously refer to the payment transaction.

*Usage:* If available, the initiating party should provide this reference in the structured remittance information, to enable reconciliation by the creditor upon receipt of the amount of money.

If the business context requires the use of a creditor reference or a payment remit identification, and only one identifier can be passed through the end-to-end chain, the creditor's reference or payment remittance identification should be quoted in the end-to-end transaction identification.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

## 6.1.15 Financial Institution Identification

### 6.1.15.1 ClearingSystemMemberIdentification2

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by a clearing system, to unambiguously identify a member of the clearing system.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]	±		238
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		238

### 6.1.15.1.1 ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specification of a pre-agreed offering between clearing agents or the channel through which the payment instruction is processed.

**ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>** contains one of the following elements (see "ClearingSystemIdentification2Choice" on page 328 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		328
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		328

### 6.1.15.1.2 MemberIdentification <Mmbld>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a member of a clearing system.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 372

### 6.1.15.2 FinancialInstitutionIdentification18

*Definition:* Specifies the details to identify a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	238
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		239
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		239
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		239
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		239
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		240

### 6.1.15.2.1 BICFI <BICFI>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Code allocated to a financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority as described in ISO 9362 "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

*Impacted by:* C4 "BICFI"

*Datatype:* "BICFIDec2014Identifier" on page 367

**Constraints**

- **BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### **6.1.15.2.2 ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Information used to identify a member within a clearing system.

**ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbId>** contains the following elements (see "[ClearingSystemMemberIdentification2](#)" on page 237 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]	±		238
	MemberIdentification <MmbId>	[1..1]	Text		238

### **6.1.15.2.3 LEI <LEI>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Legal entity identifier of the financial institution.

*Datatype:* "[LEIIdentifier](#)" on page 368

### **6.1.15.2.4 Name <Nm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name by which an agent is known and which is usually used to identify that agent.

*Datatype:* "[Max140Text](#)" on page 371

### **6.1.15.2.5 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

**PostalAddress <PstlAdr>** contains the following elements (see "[PostalAddress24](#)" on page 292 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]			292
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		293
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		293
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		293
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		293
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		294
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		294
	BuildingName <BldgNm>	[0..1]	Text		294
	Floor <Flr>	[0..1]	Text		294
	PostBox <PstBx>	[0..1]	Text		294
	Room <Room>	[0..1]	Text		294
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		294
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		294
	TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>	[0..1]	Text		295
	DistrictName <DstrctNm>	[0..1]	Text		295
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		295
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	295
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		295

#### 6.1.15.2.6 Other <Othr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification of an agent, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

**Other <Othr>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericFinancialIdentification1](#)" on page 243 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		243
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			244
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		244
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		244
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		244

### 6.1.15.3 BranchData3

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific branch of a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		241
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		241
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		241
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		241

#### 6.1.15.3.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a branch of a financial institution.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.15.3.2 LEI <LEI>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Legal entity identification for the branch of the financial institution.

*Datatype:* ["LEIIdentifier" on page 368](#)

#### 6.1.15.3.3 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name by which an agent is known and which is usually used to identify that agent.

*Datatype:* ["Max140Text" on page 371](#)

#### 6.1.15.3.4 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

**PostalAddress <PstlAdr>** contains the following elements (see "PostalAddress24" on page 292 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]			292
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		293
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		293
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		293
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		293
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		294
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		294
	BuildingName <BldgNm>	[0..1]	Text		294
	Floor <Flr>	[0..1]	Text		294
	PostBox <PstBx>	[0..1]	Text		294
	Room <Room>	[0..1]	Text		294
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		294
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		294
	TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>	[0..1]	Text		295
	DistrictName <DstrctNm>	[0..1]	Text		295
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		295
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	295
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		295

#### 6.1.15.4 BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a financial institution or a branch of a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		242
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		243

##### 6.1.15.4.1 FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a financial institution, as assigned under an internationally recognised or proprietary identification scheme.

**FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>** contains the following elements (see "FinancialInstitutionIdentification18" on page 238 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	238
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		239
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		239
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		239
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		239
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		240

#### 6.1.15.4.2 BranchIdentification <BrnchId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies a specific branch of a financial institution.

*Usage:* This component should be used in case the identification information in the financial institution component does not provide identification up to branch level.

**BranchIdentification <BrnchId>** contains the following elements (see "BranchData3" on page 241 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		241
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		241
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		241
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		241

#### 6.1.15.5 GenericFinancialIdentification1

*Definition:* Information related to an identification of a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		243
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			244
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		244
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		244
	Issuer <issr>	[0..1]	Text		244

#### 6.1.15.5.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a person.

*Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 372*

#### 6.1.15.5.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

*Presence: [0..1]*

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme.

**SchemeName <SchmeNm>** contains one of the following  
**FinancialIdentificationSchemeName1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		244
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		244

##### 6.1.15.5.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence: [1..1]*

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype: "ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentification1Code" on page 355*

##### 6.1.15.5.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence: [1..1]*

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

*Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 372*

#### 6.1.15.5.3 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence: [0..1]*

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 372*

## 6.1.16 Financial Instrument

### 6.1.16.1 SecurityIdentification19

*Definition:* Identification of a security.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ISIN </SIN>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		245
	OtherIdentification <OthrId>	[0..*]			245
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		246
	Suffix <Sfx>	[0..1]	Text		246
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		246
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		246

## Constraints

- **DescriptionPresenceRule**

If Description is not present then either ISIN or at least one occurrence of OtherIdentification must be present.

On Condition

/Description is absent

Following Must be True

/ISIN Must be present

Or     /OtherIdentification[\*] Must be present

- **DescriptionUsageRule**

Description must be used alone as the last resort.

- **ISINGuideline**

When an ISIN code exists, it is strongly recommended that the ISIN be used.

- **ISINPresenceRule**

If ISIN is not present then either Description or at least one occurrence of OtherIdentification must be present.

On Condition

/ISIN is absent

Following Must be True

/OtherIdentification[\*] Must be present

Or     /Description Must be present

- **OtherIdentificationPresenceRule**

If OtherIdentification is not present then either ISIN or Description must be present.

On Condition

/OtherIdentification[\*] is absent

Following Must be True

/ISIN Must be present

Or     /Description Must be present

### 6.1.16.1.1 ISIN <ISIN>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* International Securities Identification Number (ISIN). A numbering system designed by the United Nation's International Organisation for Standardisation (ISO). The ISIN is composed of a 2-character prefix representing the country of issue, followed by the national security number (if one exists), and a check digit. Each country has a national numbering agency that assigns ISIN numbers for securities in that country.

*Datatype:* ["ISINOct2015Identifier" on page 367](#)

### 6.1.16.1.2 OtherIdentification <OthrId>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Identification of a security by proprietary or domestic identification scheme.

**OtherIdentification <OthrId>** contains the following **OtherIdentification1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification </d>	[1..1]	Text		246
	Suffix <Sfx>	[0..1]	Text		246
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		246

#### 6.1.16.1.2.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a security.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.16.1.2.2 Suffix <Sfx>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the suffix of the security identification.

*Datatype:* ["Max16Text" on page 371](#)

#### 6.1.16.1.2.3 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of the identification.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following elements (see ["IdentificationSource3Choice" on page 248](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		249

#### 6.1.16.1.3 Description <Desc>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Textual description of a security instrument.

*Datatype:* ["Max140Text" on page 371](#)

### 6.1.17 Financial Instrument Quantity

#### 6.1.17.1 FinancialInstrumentQuantity1Choice

*Definition:* Choice between formats for the quantity of security.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Unit <Unit>	[1..1]	Quantity		247
Or	FaceAmount <FaceAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		247
Or}	AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal>	[1..1]	Amount		247

#### 6.1.17.1.1 Unit <Unit>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Quantity expressed as a number, for example, a number of shares.

*Datatype:* "DecimalNumber" on page 369

#### 6.1.17.1.2 FaceAmount <FaceAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Quantity expressed as an amount representing the face amount, that is, the principal, of a debt instrument.

*Datatype:* "ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344

#### 6.1.17.1.3 AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Quantity expressed as an amount representing the current amortised face amount of a bond, for example, a periodic reduction/increase of a bond's principal amount.

*Datatype:* "ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344

## 6.1.18 Identification Information

#### 6.1.18.1 GenericIdentification1

*Definition:* Information related to an identification, for example party identification or account identification.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		247
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	Text		247
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		248

#### 6.1.18.1.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification assigned by an institution.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 372

#### 6.1.18.1.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

### 6.1.18.1.3 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

### 6.1.18.2 GenericIdentification30

*Definition:* Information related to an identification, for example, party identification or account identification.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	Text		248

#### 6.1.18.2.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary information, often a code, issued by the data source scheme issuer.

*Datatype:* ["Exact4AlphaNumericText" on page 370](#)

#### 6.1.18.2.2 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.18.2.3 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Short textual description of the scheme.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

### 6.1.18.3 IdentificationSource3Choice

*Definition:* Choice between source of identification of a financial instrument.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		249

#### 6.1.18.3.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification source, as assigned via a pre-determined code list.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalFinancialInstrumentIdentificationType1Code" on page 355](#)

### 6.1.18.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification source using a proprietary identification scheme.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

### 6.1.18.4 GenericIdentification32

*Definition:* Identification of an entity.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		249
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		249
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	CodeSet		250
	ShortName <ShrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		250

#### 6.1.18.4.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the entity.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.18.4.2 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Type of identified entity.

*Datatype:* ["PartyType3Code" on page 360](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
OPOI	OriginatingPOI	Point Of Interaction initiating the card payment transaction.
MERC	Merchant	Merchant providing goods and service in the card payment transaction.
ACCP	Acceptor	Card acceptor, party accepting the card and presenting transaction data to the acquirer.
ITAG	IntermediaryAgent	Party acting on behalf of other parties to process or forward data to other parties.
ACQR	Acquirer	Entity acquiring card transactions.
CISS	CardIssuer	Party that issues cards.
DLIS	DelegateIssuer	Party to whom the card issuer delegates to authorise card payment transactions.

### 6.1.18.4.3 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity assigning the identification (for example merchant, acceptor, acquirer, or tax authority).

*Datatype:* "PartyType4Code" on page 360

CodeName	Name	Definition
MERC	Merchant	Merchant providing goods and service in the card payment transaction.
ACCP	Acceptor	Card acceptor, party accepting the card and presenting transaction data to the acquirer.
ITAG	IntermediaryAgent	Party acting on behalf of other parties to process or forward data to other parties.
ACQR	Acquirer	Entity acquiring card transactions.
CISS	CardIssuer	Party that issues cards.
TAXH	TaxAuthority	Tax authority.

### 6.1.18.4.4 ShortName <ShrtNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the entity.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 372

### 6.1.18.5 GenericIdentification3

*Definition:* Information related to an identification, for example, party identification or account identification.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		250

#### 6.1.18.5.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name or number assigned by an entity to enable recognition of that entity, for example, account identifier.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 372

#### 6.1.18.5.2 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 372

## 6.1.19 Miscellaneous

### 6.1.19.1 NumberAndSumOfTransactions1

*Definition:* Set of elements providing the total sum of entries.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		251
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		251

#### 6.1.19.1.1 NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number of individual entries included in the report.

*Datatype:* ["Max15NumericText" on page 371](#)

#### 6.1.19.1.2 Sum <Sum>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total of all individual entries included in the report.

*Datatype:* ["DecimalNumber" on page 369](#)

### 6.1.19.2 ReportingSource1Choice

*Definition:* Specifies the source used to generate the reporting.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251

#### 6.1.19.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reporting source, as published in an external reporting source code list.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalReportingSource1Code" on page 357](#)

#### 6.1.19.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reporting source, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

### 6.1.19.3 SequenceRange1Choice

*Definition:* Specifies a choice of sequences.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	FromSequence < <i>FrSeq</i> >	[1..1]	Text		252
Or	ToSequence < <i>ToSeq</i> >	[1..1]	Text		252
Or	FromToSequence < <i>FrToSeq</i> >	[1..*]			252
	FromSequence < <i>FrSeq</i> >	[1..1]	Text		252
	ToSequence < <i>ToSeq</i> >	[1..1]	Text		252
Or	EqualSequence < <i>EQSeq</i> >	[1..*]	Text		253
Or}	NotEqualSequence < <i>NEQSeq</i> >	[1..*]	Text		253

#### 6.1.19.3.1 FromSequence <*FrSeq*>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Start sequence of the range.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.19.3.2 ToSequence <*ToSeq*>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* End sequence of the range.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.19.3.3 FromToSequence <*FrToSeq*>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Particular sequence range specified between a start sequence and an end sequence.

**FromToSequence <*FrToSeq*>** contains the following **SequenceRange1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromSequence < <i>FrSeq</i> >	[1..1]	Text		252
	ToSequence < <i>ToSeq</i> >	[1..1]	Text		252

#### 6.1.19.3.3.1 FromSequence <*FrSeq*>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Start sequence of the range.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.19.3.3.2 ToSequence <*ToSeq*>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* End sequence of the range.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.19.3.4 EqualSequence <EQSeq>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Specified sequence to match.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 372

#### 6.1.19.3.5 NotEqualSequence <NEQSeq>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Specified sequence to be excluded.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 372

### 6.1.19.4 Purpose2Choice

*Definition:* Specifies the underlying reason for the payment transaction.

*Usage:* Purpose is used by the end-customers, that is initiating party, (ultimate) debtor, (ultimate) creditor to provide information concerning the nature of the payment. Purpose is a content element, which is not used for processing by any of the agents involved in the payment chain.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		253
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		253

#### 6.1.19.4.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Underlying reason for the payment transaction, as published in an external purpose code list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalPurpose1Code" on page 357

#### 6.1.19.4.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Purpose, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 372

### 6.1.19.5 OriginalBusinessQuery1

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the original requestor, to unambiguously identify the business query message.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		254
	MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>	[0..1]	Text		254
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		254

### 6.1.19.5.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the original initiating party, to unambiguously identify the original query message.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

### 6.1.19.5.2 MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the query message name identifier to which the message refers.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

### 6.1.19.5.3 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the message was created.

*Datatype:* ["ISODateTime" on page 366](#)

## 6.1.19.6 TransactionInterest4

*Definition:* Provide further details on transaction specific interest information that applies to the underlying transaction.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalInterestAndTaxAmount <TtlIntrstAndTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	255
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]			256
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	257
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		258
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			258
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		258
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		258
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]			259
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		259
	ValidityRange <VldtyRg>	[0..1]			259
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			260
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		260
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		261
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			261
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		261
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		261
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		262
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		262
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		262
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	262
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		262
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		263
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]			263
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		263
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		263
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	263

#### 6.1.19.6.1 TotalInterestAndTaxAmount <TtlIntrstAndTaxAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Total amount of interests and taxes included in the entry amount.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### **6.1.19.6.2 Record <Rcrd>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Individual interest record.

**Record <Rcrd>** contains the following **InterestRecord2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	257
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		258
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			258
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		258
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		258
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]			259
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		259
	ValidityRange <VldtyRg>	[0..1]			259
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			260
{Or}	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		260
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		261
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			261
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		261
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		261
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		262
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		262
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		262
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	262
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		262
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		263
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]			263
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		263
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		263
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	263

#### 6.1.19.6.2.1 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of interest included in the entry amount.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344

## Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### 6.1.19.6.2.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the interest amount included in the entry is credit or debit amount.

*Usage:* A zero amount is considered to be a credit.

*Datatype:* "[CreditDebitCode](#)" on page 350

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

### 6.1.19.6.2.3 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of interest.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following **InterestType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		258
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		258

#### 6.1.19.6.2.3.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of interest.

*Datatype:* "[InterestType1Code](#)" on page 359

CodeName	Name	Definition
INDY	IntraDay	During or within a business day.
OVRN	OverNight	Period of time between the end of a business day and the start of the next business day (usually the day after).

#### 6.1.19.6.2.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of interest in uncoded form.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.19.6.2.4 Rate <Rate>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to qualify the interest rate.

Rate <Rate> contains the following **Rate4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		259
	ValidityRange <VldtyRg>	[0..1]			259
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			260
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		260
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		261
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			261
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		261
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		261
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		262
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		262
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		262
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	262

#### 6.1.19.6.2.4.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of interest rate.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following elements (see ["RateType4Choice" on page 297](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Percentage <Pctg>	[1..1]	Rate		297
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]	Text		297

#### 6.1.19.6.2.4.2 ValidityRange <VldtyRg>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* An amount range where the interest rate is applicable.

**ValidityRange <VldtyRg>** contains the following **ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmountRange2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			260
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		260
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		261
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			261
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		261
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		261
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		262
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		262
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		262
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	262

#### 6.1.19.6.2.4.2.1 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified amount or amount range.

**Amount <Amt>** contains one of the following **ImpliedCurrencyAmountRange1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		260
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		261
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			261
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		261
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		261
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		262
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		262

##### 6.1.19.6.2.4.2.1.1 FromAmount <FrAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Lower boundary of a range of amount values.

**FromAmount <FrAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 138 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		138
	Included </Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		138

#### 6.1.19.6.2.4.2.1.2 ToAmount <ToAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Upper boundary of a range of amount values.

**ToAmount <ToAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 138 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		138
	Included </Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		138

#### 6.1.19.6.2.4.2.1.3 FromToAmount <FrToAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Range of valid amount values.

**FromToAmount <FrToAmt>** contains the following **FromToAmountRange1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		261
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		261

#### 6.1.19.6.2.4.2.1.3.1 FromAmount <FrAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Lower boundary of a range of amount values.

**FromAmount <FrAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 138 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		138
	Included </Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		138

#### 6.1.19.6.2.4.2.1.3.2 ToAmount <ToAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Upper boundary of a range of amount values.

**ToAmount <ToAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 138 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount < <i>BdryAmt</i> >	[1..1]	Amount		138
	Included < <i>Incl</i> >	[1..1]	Indicator		138

#### 6.1.19.6.2.4.2.1.4 EqualAmount <EQAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Exact value an amount must match to be considered valid.

*Datatype:* "[ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount](#)" on page 344

#### 6.1.19.6.2.4.2.1.5 NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Value that an amount must not match to be considered valid.

*Datatype:* "[ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount](#)" on page 344

#### 6.1.19.6.2.4.2.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the amount is a credited or debited amount.

*Datatype:* "[CreditDebitCode](#)" on page 350

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

#### 6.1.19.6.2.4.2.3 Currency <Ccy>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Medium of exchange of value, used to qualify an amount.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#)

*Datatype:* "[ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode](#)" on page 345

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 6.1.19.6.2.5 FromToDate <FrToDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Range of time between a start date and an end date for the calculation of the interest.

**FromToDate <FrToDt>** contains the following elements (see "[DateTimePeriod1](#)" on page 234 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDateTime < <i>FrDtTm</i> >	[1..1]	DateTime		234
	ToDateTime < <i>ToDtTm</i> >	[1..1]	DateTime		235

#### 6.1.19.6.2.6 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the interest.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.19.6.2.7 Tax <Tax>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the tax applied to charges.

**Tax <Tax>** contains the following **TaxCharges2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification < <i>Id</i> >	[0..1]	Text		263
	Rate < <i>Rate</i> >	[0..1]	Rate		263
	Amount < <i>Amt</i> >	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	263

#### 6.1.19.6.2.7.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique reference to unambiguously identify the nature of the tax levied, such as Value Added Tax (VAT).

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.19.6.2.7.2 Rate <Rate>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Rate used to calculate the tax.

*Datatype:* ["PercentageRate" on page 370](#)

#### 6.1.19.6.2.7.3 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money resulting from the calculation of the tax.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344](#)

## Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### 6.1.19.7 TotalTransactions6

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide summary information on entries.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalEntries <TtlNtries>	[0..1]			264
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		265
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		265
	TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>	[0..1]	±		265
	TotalCreditEntries <TtlCdtNtries>	[0..1]	±		265
	TotalDebitEntries <TtlDbtNtries>	[0..1]	±		265
	TotalEntriesPerBankTransactionCode <TtlNtriesPerBkTxCd>	[0..*]			266
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		266
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		266
	TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>	[0..1]	±		266
	CreditEntries <CdtNtries>	[0..1]	±		267
	DebitEntries <DbtNtries>	[0..1]	±		267
	ForecastIndicator <FcstInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		267
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	267
	Availability <Avlblty>	[0..*]	±		268
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	±		268

#### 6.1.19.7.1 TotalEntries <TtlNtries>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the total number and sum of debit and credit entries.

**TotalEntries <TtlNtries>** contains the following **NumberAndSumOfTransactions4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		265
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		265
	TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>	[0..1]	±		265

#### 6.1.19.7.1.1 NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number of individual entries included in the report.

*Datatype:* ["Max15NumericText" on page 371](#)

#### 6.1.19.7.1.2 Sum <Sum>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total of all individual entries included in the report.

*Datatype:* ["DecimalNumber" on page 369](#)

#### 6.1.19.7.1.3 TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Resulting debit or credit amount of the netted amounts for all debit and credit entries.

**TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>** contains the following elements (see ["AmountAndDirection35" on page 137](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Quantity		137
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		137

#### 6.1.19.7.2 TotalCreditEntries <TtlCdtNtries>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the total number and sum of credit entries.

**TotalCreditEntries <TtlCdtNtries>** contains the following elements (see ["NumberAndSumOfTransactions1" on page 251](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		251
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		251

#### 6.1.19.7.3 TotalDebitEntries <TtlDbtNtries>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the total number and sum of debit entries.

**TotalDebitEntries <TtlDbtNtries>** contains the following elements (see "NumberAndSumOfTransactions1" on page 251 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		251
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		251

#### 6.1.19.7.4 TotalEntriesPerBankTransactionCode <TtlNtriesPerBkTxCd>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies the total number and sum of entries per bank transaction code.

**TotalEntriesPerBankTransactionCode <TtlNtriesPerBkTxCd>** contains the following **TotalsPerBankTransactionCode5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		266
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		266
	TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>	[0..1]	±		266
	CreditEntries <CdtNtries>	[0..1]	±		267
	DebitEntries <DbtNtries>	[0..1]	±		267
	ForecastIndicator <FcstInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		267
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	267
	Availability <Avlblty>	[0..*]	±		268
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	±		268

##### 6.1.19.7.4.1 NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number of individual entries for the bank transaction code.

*Datatype:* "Max15NumericText" on page 371

##### 6.1.19.7.4.2 Sum <Sum>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total of all individual entries included in the report.

*Datatype:* "DecimalNumber" on page 369

##### 6.1.19.7.4.3 TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total debit or credit amount that is the result of the netted amounts for all debit and credit entries per bank transaction code.

**TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountAndDirection35](#)" on page 137 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Quantity		137
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		137

#### 6.1.19.7.4.4 CreditEntries <CdtNtries>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number of individual credit entries for the bank transaction code.

**CreditEntries <CdtNtries>** contains the following elements (see "[NumberAndSumOfTransactions1](#)" on page 251 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		251
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		251

#### 6.1.19.7.4.5 DebitEntries <DbtNtries>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number of individual debit entries for the bank transaction code.

**DebitEntries <DbtNtries>** contains the following elements (see "[NumberAndSumOfTransactions1](#)" on page 251 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		251
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		251

#### 6.1.19.7.4.6 ForecastIndicator <FcstInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the bank transaction code is related to booked or forecast items.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "[TrueFalseIndicator](#)" on page 368):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 6.1.19.7.4.7 BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to fully identify the type of underlying transaction resulting in an entry.

*Impacted by:* [C10 "DomainOrProprietaryRule"](#), [C11 "FamilyAndSubFamilyRule"](#)

**BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>** contains the following elements (see "BankTransactionCodeStructure4" on page 141 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Domain <Domn>	[0..1]	±		142
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..1]			142
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	Text		142
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		142

#### Constraints

- **DomainOrProprietaryRule**

Either Proprietary or Domain or both must be present.

Following Must be True  
 /Domain Must be present  
 Or /Proprietary Must be present

- **FamilyAndSubFamilyRule**

If a specific (non-generic) Family code is not present, then a specific (non-generic) SubFamily code is not allowed.

#### 6.1.19.7.4.8 Availability <Avlbt>

Presence: [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to indicate when the booked amount of money will become available, that is can be accessed and starts generating interest.

**Availability <Avlbt>** contains the following elements (see "CashAvailability1" on page 187 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			187
{Or}	NumberOfDays <NbOfDays>	[1..1]	Text		187
Or}	ActualDate <ActlDt>	[1..1]	Date		187
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	188
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		188

#### 6.1.19.7.4.9 Date <Dt>

Presence: [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates the date (and time) of the transaction summary.

**Date <Dt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DateAndDateTime2Choice](#)" on page 234 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		234
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		234

## 6.1.19.8 GroupHeader81

*Definition:* Provides further details on the message.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		269
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		269
	MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>	[0..1]	±		269
	MessagePagination <MsgPgntn>	[0..1]	±		270
	OriginalBusinessQuery <OrgnlBizQry>	[0..1]	±		270
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		270

### 6.1.19.8.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the account servicing institution, and sent to the account owner or the party authorised to receive the message, to unambiguously identify the message.

*Usage:* The account servicing institution has to make sure that MessageIdentification is unique per account owner for a pre-agreed period.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

### 6.1.19.8.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the message was created.

*Datatype:* "[ISODateTime](#)" on page 366

### 6.1.19.8.3 MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party authorised by the account owner to receive information about movements on the account.

*Usage:* MessageRecipient should only be identified when different from the account owner.

**MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification135](#)" on page 282 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		282
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		282
	Identification </d>	[0..1]	±		283
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	283
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		284

#### 6.1.19.8.4 MessagePagination <MsgPgntn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the page number of the message.

*Usage:* The pagination of the message is only allowed when agreed between the parties.

**MessagePagination <MsgPgntn>** contains the following elements (see "[Pagination1](#)" on page 271 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PageNumber <PgNb>	[1..1]	Text		272
	LastPageIndicator <LastPgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		272

#### 6.1.19.8.5 OriginalBusinessQuery <OrgnlBizQry>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the original requestor, to unambiguously identify the business query message.

**OriginalBusinessQuery <OrgnlBizQry>** contains the following elements (see "[OriginalBusinessQuery1](#)" on page 253 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		254
	MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>	[0..1]	Text		254
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		254

#### 6.1.19.8.6 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInfr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Further details of the message.

*Datatype:* "[Max500Text](#)" on page 373

## 6.1.19.9 GroupHeader77

*Definition:* Provides further details on the message.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		271
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		271
	MessageSender <MsgSndr>	[0..1]	±		271

### 6.1.19.9.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the account owner or the party authorised to send the message, and sent to the account servicing institution, to unambiguously identify the message.

*Usage:* The sender has to make sure that 'MessageIdentification' is unique per account servicing institution for a pre-agreed period.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

### 6.1.19.9.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the message was created.

*Datatype:* ["ISODateTime" on page 366](#)

### 6.1.19.9.3 MessageSender <MsgSndr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the party that is sending the message, when different from the account owner.

**MessageSender <MsgSndr>** contains one of the following elements (see ["Party40Choice" on page 285](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		286
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		286

## 6.1.19.10 Pagination1

*Definition:* Number used to sequence pages when it is not possible for data to be conveyed in a single message and the data has to be split across several pages (messages).

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PageNumber <PgNb>	[1..1]	Text		272
	LastPageIndicator <LastPgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		272

### 6.1.19.10.1 PageNumber <PgNb>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Page number.

*Datatype:* ["Max5NumericText" on page 373](#)

### 6.1.19.10.2 LastPageIndicator <LastPgInd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates the last page.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see ["YesNoIndicator" on page 368](#)):

- *Meaning When True:* Yes
- *Meaning When False:* No

## 6.1.19.11 TransactionIdentifier1

*Definition:* Identification of the transaction in an unambiguous way.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TransactionDateTime <TxDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		272
	TransactionReference <TxRef>	[1..1]	Text		272

### 6.1.19.11.1 TransactionDateTime <TxDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Local date and time of the transaction assigned by the POI (Point Of Interaction).

*Datatype:* ["ISODateTime" on page 366](#)

### 6.1.19.11.2 TransactionReference <TxRef>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the transaction that has to be unique for a time period.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

## 6.1.19.12 RemittanceAmount2

*Definition:* Nature of the amount and currency on a document referred to in the remittance section, typically either the original amount due/payable or the amount actually remitted for the referenced document.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	273
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntAppldAmt>	[0..*]			274
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			274
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		274
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		274
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	274
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	275
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			275
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			275
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		276
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		276
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	276
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			276
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	277
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		277
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		277
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInft>	[0..1]	Text		277
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	278

### 6.1.19.12.1 DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount specified is the exact amount due and payable to the creditor.

Impacted by: [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

Datatype: ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344](#)

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### 6.1.19.12.2 DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntAppldAmt>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Amount specified for the referred document is the amount of discount to be applied to the amount due and payable to the creditor.

**DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntAppldAmt>** contains the following **DiscountAmountAndType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			274
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		274
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		274
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	274

#### 6.1.19.12.2.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of the amount.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **DiscountAmountType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		274
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		274

#### 6.1.19.12.2.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the amount type, in a coded form.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalDiscountAmountType1Code" on page 354](#)

#### 6.1.19.12.2.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the amount type, in a free-text form.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.19.12.2.2 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money, which has been typed.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344](#)

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**6.1.19.12.3 CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount specified for the referred document is the amount of a credit note.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344](#)

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**6.1.19.12.4 TaxAmount <TaxAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Quantity of cash resulting from the calculation of the tax.

**TaxAmount <TaxAmt>** contains the following **TaxAmountAndType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			275
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		276
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		276
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	276

**6.1.19.12.4.1 Type <Tp>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of the amount.

Type **<Tp>** contains one of the following **TaxAmountType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Code < <i>Cd</i> >	[1..1]	CodeSet		276
Or}	Proprietary < <i>Prtry</i> >	[1..1]	Text		276

#### 6.1.19.12.4.1.1 Code <*Cd*>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the amount type, in a coded form.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalTaxAmountType1Code" on page 358](#)

#### 6.1.19.12.4.1.2 Proprietary <*Prtry*>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the amount type, in a free-text form.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.19.12.4.2 Amount <*Amt*>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money, which has been typed.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344](#)

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.19.12.5 AdjustmentAmountAndReason <*AdjstmntAmtAndRsn*>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies detailed information on the amount and reason of the document adjustment.

**AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>** contains the following  
**DocumentAdjustment1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	277
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		277
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		277
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInfr>	[0..1]	Text		277

#### 6.1.19.12.5.1 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money of the document adjustment.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount"](#) on page 344

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.19.12.5.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether the adjustment must be subtracted or added to the total amount.

*Datatype:* ["CreditDebitCode"](#) on page 350

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

#### 6.1.19.12.5.3 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the adjustment.

*Datatype:* ["Max4Text"](#) on page 373

#### 6.1.19.12.5.4 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInfr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides further details on the document adjustment.

*Datatype:* ["Max140Text" on page 371](#)

#### 6.1.19.12.6 RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money remitted for the referred document.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344](#)

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.19.13 YieldedOrValueType1Choice

*Definition:* Choice of value type.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Yielded <Yldd>	[1..1]	Indicator		278
Or}	ValueType <ValTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		278

##### 6.1.19.13.1 Yielded <Yldd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the price is expressed as a yield.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see ["YesNoIndicator" on page 368](#)):

- *Meaning When True:* Yes
- *Meaning When False:* No

##### 6.1.19.13.2 ValueType <ValTp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of value in which the price is expressed.

*Datatype:* ["PriceValueType1Code" on page 361](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
DISC	Discount	Price expressed as a number of percentage points below par, for

CodeName	Name	Definition
		example, a discount price of 2.0% equals a price of 98 when par is 100.
PREM	Premium	Price expressed as a number of percentage points above par, for example, a premium price of 2.0% equals a price of 102 when par is 100.
PARV	Par	Price is the face amount.

### 6.1.19.14 SupplementaryData1

*Definition:* Additional information that can not be captured in the structured fields and/or any other specific block.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		279
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		279

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

#### 6.1.19.14.1 PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous reference to the location where the supplementary data must be inserted in the message instance.

In the case of XML, this is expressed by a valid XPath.

*Datatype:* ["Max350Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.19.14.2 Envelope <Envlp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Technical element wrapping the supplementary data.

*Type:* (External Schema)

Technical component that contains the validated supplementary data information. This technical envelope allows to segregate the supplementary data information from any other information.

## 6.1.20 Organisation Identification

### 6.1.20.1 OrganisationIdentification29

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous way to identify an organisation.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	280
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		280
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			280
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		281
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			281
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		281
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		281
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		281

### 6.1.20.1.1 AnyBIC <AnyBIC>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Business identification code of the organisation.

*Impacted by:* C3 "AnyBIC"

*Datatype:* "AnyBICDec2014Identifier" on page 366

#### Constraints

- **AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### 6.1.20.1.2 LEI <LEI>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Legal entity identification as an alternate identification for a party.

*Datatype:* "LEIIdentifier" on page 368

### 6.1.20.1.3 Other <Othr>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Unique identification of an organisation, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

**Other <Othr>** contains the following **GenericOrganisationIdentification1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification </d>	[1..1]	Text		281
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			281
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		281
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		281
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		281

#### 6.1.20.1.3.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification assigned by an institution.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 372

#### 6.1.20.1.3.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme.

**SchemeName <SchmeNm>** contains one of the following  
**OrganisationIdentificationSchemeName1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		281
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		281

#### 6.1.20.1.3.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalOrganisationIdentification1Code" on page 356

#### 6.1.20.1.3.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 372

#### 6.1.20.1.3.3 Issuer </ssr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 372

## 6.1.21 Party Identification

### 6.1.21.1 PartyIdentification135

*Definition:* Specifies the identification of a person or an organisation.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		282
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		282
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		283
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	283
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		284

#### 6.1.21.1.1 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name by which a party is known and which is usually used to identify that party.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 371

#### 6.1.21.1.2 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

**PostalAddress <PstlAdr>** contains the following elements (see "[PostalAddress24](#)" on page 292 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]			292
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		293
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		293
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		293
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		293
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		294
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		294
	BuildingName <BldgNm>	[0..1]	Text		294
	Floor <Flr>	[0..1]	Text		294
	PostBox <PstBx>	[0..1]	Text		294
	Room <Room>	[0..1]	Text		294
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		294
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		294
	TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>	[0..1]	Text		295
	DistrictName <DstrctNm>	[0..1]	Text		295
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		295
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	295
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		295

#### 6.1.21.1.3 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a party.

**Identification <Id>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party38Choice](#)" on page 284 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]	±		284
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]	±		285

#### 6.1.21.1.4 CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Country in which a person resides (the place of a person's home). In the case of a company, it is the country from which the affairs of that company are directed.

*Impacted by:* C5 "Country"

*Datatype:* "CountryCode" on page 349

#### Constraints

- **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

### 6.1.21.1.5 ContactDetails <CtctDtls>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to indicate how to contact the party.

ContactDetails <CtctDtls> contains the following elements (see "Contact4" on page 289 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		289
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		290
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		290
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		290
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		290
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		290
	EmailPurpose <EmailPurp>	[0..1]	Text		290
	JobTitle <JobTitl>	[0..1]	Text		290
	Responsibility <Rspnsblty>	[0..1]	Text		291
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		291
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			291
	ChannelType <ChnlTp>	[1..1]	Text		291
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		291
	PreferredMethod <PrefrdMtd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		291

### 6.1.21.2 Party38Choice

*Definition:* Nature or use of the account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]	±		284
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]	±		285

#### 6.1.21.2.1 OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous way to identify an organisation.

**OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>** contains the following elements (see "[OrganisationIdentification29](#)" on page 279 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	280
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		280
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			280
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		281
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			281
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		281
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		281
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		281

### 6.1.21.2.2 PrivatIdentification <PrvtId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a person, for example a passport.

**PrivatIdentification <PrvtId>** contains the following elements (see "[PersonIdentification13](#)" on page 286 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			287
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		287
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		287
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		287
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	288
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			288
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		288
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			288
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		289
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		289
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		289

### 6.1.21.3 Party40Choice

*Definition:* Identification of a person, an organisation or a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		286
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		286

### 6.1.21.3.1 Party <Pty>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a person or an organisation.

**Party <Pty>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification135](#)" on page 282 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		282
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		282
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		283
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	283
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		284

### 6.1.21.3.2 Agent <Agt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a financial institution.

**Agent <Agt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 242 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		242
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		243

## 6.1.22 Person Identification

### 6.1.22.1 PersonIdentification13

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous way to identify a person.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			287
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		287
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		287
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		287
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	288
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			288
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		288
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			288
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		289
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		289
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		289

#### 6.1.22.1.1 DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and place of birth of a person.

DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth> contains the following DateAndPlaceOfBirth1 elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		287
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		287
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		287
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	288

##### 6.1.22.1.1.1 BirthDate <BirthDt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Date on which a person is born.

Datatype: ["ISODate" on page 366](#)

##### 6.1.22.1.1.2 ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Province where a person was born.

Datatype: ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

##### 6.1.22.1.1.3 CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: City where a person was born.

*Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 372*

#### 6.1.22.1.1.4 CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>

*Presence: [1..1]*

*Definition:* Country where a person was born.

*Impacted by:* C5 "Country"

*Datatype: "CountryCode" on page 349*

##### Constraints

- **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

#### 6.1.22.1.2 Other <Othr>

*Presence: [0..\*]*

*Definition:* Unique identification of a person, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

**Other <Othr>** contains the following **GenericPersonIdentification1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification </Id>	[1..1]	Text		288
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			288
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		289
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		289
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		289

##### 6.1.22.1.2.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence: [1..1]*

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a person.

*Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 372*

##### 6.1.22.1.2.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

*Presence: [0..1]*

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme.

**SchemeName <SchmeNm>** contains one of the following **PersonIdentificationSchemeName1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		289
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		289

### 6.1.22.1.2.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalPersonIdentification1Code" on page 356](#)

### 6.1.22.1.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

### 6.1.22.1.2.3 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

## 6.1.22.2 Contact4

*Definition:* Specifies the details of the contact person.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		289
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		290
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		290
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		290
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		290
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		290
	EmailPurpose <EmailPurp>	[0..1]	Text		290
	JobTitle <JobTitl>	[0..1]	Text		290
	Responsibility <Rspnsbly>	[0..1]	Text		291
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		291
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			291
	ChannelType <ChnlTp>	[1..1]	Text		291
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		291
	PreferredMethod <PrefrdMtd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		291

### 6.1.22.2.1 NamePrefix <NmPrfx>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the terms used to formally address a person.

*Datatype:* ["NamePrefix2Code" on page 359](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
DOCT	Doctor	Title of the person is Doctor or Dr.
MADM	Madam	Title of the person is Madam.
MISS	Miss	Title of the person is Miss.
MIST	Mister	Title of the person is Mister or Mr.
MIKS	GenderNeutral	Title of the person is gender neutral (Mx).

#### 6.1.22.2.2 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name by which a party is known and which is usually used to identify that party.

*Datatype:* ["Max140Text" on page 371](#)

#### 6.1.22.2.3 PhoneNumber <PhneNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Collection of information that identifies a phone number, as defined by telecom services.

*Datatype:* ["PhoneNumber" on page 374](#)

#### 6.1.22.2.4 MobileNumber <MobNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Collection of information that identifies a mobile phone number, as defined by telecom services.

*Datatype:* ["PhoneNumber" on page 374](#)

#### 6.1.22.2.5 FaxNumber <FaxNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Collection of information that identifies a FAX number, as defined by telecom services.

*Datatype:* ["PhoneNumber" on page 374](#)

#### 6.1.22.2.6 EmailAddress <EmailAdr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Address for electronic mail (e-mail).

*Datatype:* ["Max2048Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.22.2.7 EmailPurpose <EmailPurp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Purpose for which an email address may be used.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.22.2.8 JobTitle <JobTitl>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Title of the function.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.22.2.9 Responsibility <Rspnsblty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Role of a person in an organisation.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.22.2.10 Department <Dept>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a division of a large organisation or building.

*Datatype:* ["Max70Text" on page 373](#)

#### 6.1.22.2.11 Other <Othr>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Contact details in another form.

Other <Othr> contains the following **OtherContact1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ChannelType <ChnlTp>	[1..1]	Text		291
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		291

##### 6.1.22.2.11.1 ChannelType <ChnlTp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Method used to contact the financial institution's contact for the specific tax region.

*Datatype:* ["Max4Text" on page 373](#)

##### 6.1.22.2.11.2 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Communication value such as phone number or email address.

*Datatype:* ["Max128Text" on page 371](#)

#### 6.1.22.2.12 PreferredMethod <PrefrdMtd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Preferred method used to reach the contact.

*Datatype:* ["PreferredContactMethod1Code" on page 361](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
LETT	Letter	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per letter.
MAIL	Email	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per email.

CodeName	Name	Definition
PHON	Phone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per phone.
FAXX	Fax	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per fax.
CELL	MobileOrCellPhone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per mobile or cell phone.

## 6.1.23 Postal Address

### 6.1.23.1 PostalAddress24

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]			292
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		293
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		293
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		293
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		293
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		294
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		294
	BuildingName <BldgNm>	[0..1]	Text		294
	Floor <Flr>	[0..1]	Text		294
	PostBox <PstBx>	[0..1]	Text		294
	Room <Room>	[0..1]	Text		294
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		294
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		294
	TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>	[0..1]	Text		295
	DistrictName <DstrctNm>	[0..1]	Text		295
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		295
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	295
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		295

#### 6.1.23.1.1 AddressType <AdrTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the nature of the postal address.

**AddressType <AdrTp>** contains one of the following **AddressType3Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		293
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		293

#### 6.1.23.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of address expressed as a code.

*Datatype:* ["AddressType2Code" on page 345](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
ADDR	Postal	Address is the complete postal address.
PBOX	POBox	Address is a postal office (PO) box.
HOME	Residential	Address is the home address.
BIZZ	Business	Address is the business address.
MLTO	MailTo	Address is the address to which mail is sent.
DLVY	DeliveryTo	Address is the address to which delivery is to take place.

#### 6.1.23.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of address expressed as a proprietary code.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see ["GenericIdentification30" on page 248](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <issr>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	Text		248

#### 6.1.23.1.2 Department <Dept>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a division of a large organisation or building.

*Datatype:* ["Max70Text" on page 373](#)

#### 6.1.23.1.3 SubDepartment <SubDept>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a sub-division of a large organisation or building.

*Datatype:* ["Max70Text" on page 373](#)

#### 6.1.23.1.4 StreetName <StrtNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of a street or thoroughfare.

*Datatype:* ["Max70Text" on page 373](#)

#### 6.1.23.1.5 BuildingNumber <BldgNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number that identifies the position of a building on a street.

*Datatype:* ["Max16Text" on page 371](#)

#### 6.1.23.1.6 BuildingName <BldgNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the building or house.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.23.1.7 Floor <Flr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Floor or storey within a building.

*Datatype:* ["Max70Text" on page 373](#)

#### 6.1.23.1.8 PostBox <PstBx>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Numbered box in a post office, assigned to a person or organisation, where letters are kept until called for.

*Datatype:* ["Max16Text" on page 371](#)

#### 6.1.23.1.9 Room <Room>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Building room number.

*Datatype:* ["Max70Text" on page 373](#)

#### 6.1.23.1.10 PostCode <PstCd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifier consisting of a group of letters and/or numbers that is added to a postal address to assist the sorting of mail.

*Datatype:* ["Max16Text" on page 371](#)

#### 6.1.23.1.11 TownName <TwnNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of a built-up area, with defined boundaries, and a local government.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

### 6.1.23.1.12 TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specific location name within the town.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

### 6.1.23.1.13 DistrictName <DstrctNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies a subdivision within a country sub-division.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

### 6.1.23.1.14 CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies a subdivision of a country such as state, region, county.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

### 6.1.23.1.15 Country <Ctry>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Nation with its own government.

*Impacted by:* [C5 "Country"](#)

*Datatype:* ["CountryCode" on page 349](#)

#### Constraints

- **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

### 6.1.23.1.16 AddressLine <AdrLine>

*Presence:* [0..7]

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services, presented in free format text.

*Datatype:* ["Max70Text" on page 373](#)

## 6.1.24 Price

### 6.1.24.1 PriceRateOrAmount3Choice

*Definition:* Choice of formats for the price.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Rate <Rate>	[1..1]	Rate		296
Or}	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2	296

### 6.1.24.1.1 Rate <Rate>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Price expressed as a rate, that is percentage.

*Datatype:* ["PercentageRate" on page 370](#)

### 6.1.24.1.2 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Price expressed as a currency and value.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAnd13DecimalAmount" on page 343](#)

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### 6.1.24.2 Price7

*Definition:* Type and information about a price.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		296
	Value <Val>	[1..1]	±		296

### 6.1.24.2.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specification of the price type.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following elements (see ["YieldedOrValueType1Choice" on page 278](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Yielded <Yldd>	[1..1]	Indicator		278
Or}	ValueType <ValTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		278

### 6.1.24.2.2 Value <Val>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Value of the price, for example, as a currency and value.

**Value <Val>** contains one of the following elements (see "[PriceRateOrAmount3Choice](#)" on page 295 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Rate < <i>Rate</i> >	[1..1]	Rate		296
Or}	Amount < <i>Amt</i> >	[1..1]	Amount	C2	296

## 6.1.25 Rate

### 6.1.25.1 RateType4Choice

*Definition:* Specifies the rate as a percentage or a text.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Percentage < <i>Pctg</i> >	[1..1]	Rate		297
Or}	Other < <i>Othr</i> >	[1..1]	Text		297

#### 6.1.25.1.1 Percentage <*Pctg*>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Ratio of the amount of interest paid during a certain period of time compared to the principal amount of the interest bearing financial instrument.

*Datatype:* "[PercentageRate](#)" on page 370

#### 6.1.25.1.2 Other <*Othr*>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Rate type expressed, in an other form.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

## 6.1.26 Remittance

### 6.1.26.1 StructuredRemittanceInformation16

*Definition:* Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system, in a structured form.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ReferredDocumentInformation <RfrdDocInfo>	[0..*]			299
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			301
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			301
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		301
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		302
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		302
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		302
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		303
	LineDetails <LineDtls>	[0..*]			303
	Identification <Id>	[1..*]			304
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			305
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			305
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		305
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		305
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		306
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		306
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		306
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		306
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]			306
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	307
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntAppldAmt>	[0..*]			308
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			308
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		308
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		308
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	308
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	309
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			309
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			309
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		310
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		310
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	310

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			310
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	311
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		311
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		311
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInfr>	[0..1]	Text		311
	RemittedAmount <RmttdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	312
	ReferredDocumentAmount <RfrdDocAmt>	[0..1]	±		312
	CreditorReferenceInformation <CdtrRefInfr>	[0..1]	±		313
	Invoicer <Invcr>	[0..1]	±		314
	Invoicee <Invceee>	[0..1]	±		314
	TaxRemittance <TaxRmt>	[0..1]	±		315
	GarnishmentRemittance <GrnshmtRmt>	[0..1]	±		315
	AdditionalRemittanceInformation <AddtlRmtInfr>	[0..3]	Text		316

### 6.1.26.1.1 ReferredDocumentInformation <RfrdDocInfr>

Presence: [0..\*]

Definition: Provides the identification and the content of the referred document.

**ReferredDocumentInformation <RfrdDocInf>** contains the following  
**ReferredDocumentInformation7** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			301
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			301
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		301
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		302
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		302
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		302
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		303
	LineDetails <LineDtls>	[0..*]			303
	Identification <Id>	[1..*]			304
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			305
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			305
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		305
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		305
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		306
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		306
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		306
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		306
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]			306
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	307
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DsCntAppldAmt>	[0..*]			308
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			308
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		308
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		308
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	308
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	309
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			309
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			309
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		310
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		310
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	310

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			310
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	311
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		311
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		311
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		311
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	312

#### 6.1.26.1.1.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of referred document.

Type <Tp> contains the following **ReferredDocumentType4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			301
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		301
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		302
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		302

#### 6.1.26.1.1.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Provides the type details of the referred document.

CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry> contains one of the following **ReferredDocumentType3Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		301
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		302

#### 6.1.26.1.1.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Document type in a coded form.

Datatype: "DocumentType6Code" on page 351

CodeName	Name	Definition
MSIN	MeteredServiceInvoice	Document is an invoice claiming payment for the supply of metered services, for example gas or electricity supplied to a fixed meter.

CodeName	Name	Definition
CNFA	CreditNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a credit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
DNFA	DebitNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a debit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
CINV	CommercialInvoice	Document is an invoice.
CREN	CreditNote	Document is a credit note.
DEBN	DebitNote	Document is a debit note.
HIRI	HireInvoice	Document is an invoice for the hiring of human resources or renting goods or equipment.
SBIN	SelfBilledInvoice	Document is an invoice issued by the debtor.
CMCN	CommercialContract	Document is an agreement between the parties, stipulating the terms and conditions of the delivery of goods or services.
SOAC	StatementOfAccount	Document is a statement of the transactions posted to the debtor's account at the supplier.
DISP	DispatchAdvice	Document is a dispatch advice.
BOLD	BillOfLading	Document is a shipping notice.
VCHR	Voucher	Document is an electronic payment document.
AROI	AccountReceivableOpenItem	Document is a payment that applies to a specific source document.
TSUT	TradeServicesUtilityTransaction	Document is a transaction identifier as assigned by the Trade Services Utility.
PUOR	PurchaseOrder	Document is a purchase order.

#### 6.1.26.1.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary identification of the type of the remittance document.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.26.1.1.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the issuer of the reference document type.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.26.1.1.2 Number <Nb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the referred document.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### **6.1.26.1.1.3 RelatedDate <RltdDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date associated with the referred document.

*Datatype:* ["ISODate" on page 366](#)

#### **6.1.26.1.1.4 LineDetails <LineDtls>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide the content of the referred document line.

**LineDetails <LineDtls>** contains the following **DocumentLineInformation1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification </d>	[1..*]			304
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			305
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			305
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		305
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		305
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		306
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		306
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		306
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		306
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]			306
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	307
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntAppldAmt>	[0..*]			308
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			308
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		308
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		308
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	308
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	309
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			309
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			309
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		310
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		310
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	310
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			310
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	311
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		311
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		311
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInfr>	[0..1]	Text		311
	RemittedAmount <RmttdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	312

#### 6.1.26.1.1.4.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Provides identification of the document line.

**Identification <Id>** contains the following **DocumentLineIdentification1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			305
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			305
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		305
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		305
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		306
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		306
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		306

#### 6.1.26.1.1.4.1.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of referred document line identification.

**Type <Tp>** contains the following **DocumentLineType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			305
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		305
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		305
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		306

#### 6.1.26.1.1.4.1.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the type details of the referred document line identification.

**CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>** contains one of the following **DocumentLineType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		305
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		305

#### 6.1.26.1.1.4.1.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Line identification type in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalDocumentLineType1Code" on page 355

#### 6.1.26.1.1.4.1.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary identification of the type of the remittance document.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### **6.1.26.1.1.4.1.1.2 Issuer <Issr>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the issuer of the reference document line identificationtype.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### **6.1.26.1.1.4.1.1.2 Number <Nb>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the type specified for the referred document line.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### **6.1.26.1.1.4.1.3 RelatedDate <RltdDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date associated with the referred document line.

*Datatype:* ["ISODate" on page 366](#)

#### **6.1.26.1.1.4.2 Description <Desc>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Description associated with the document line.

*Datatype:* ["Max2048Text" on page 372](#)

#### **6.1.26.1.1.4.3 Amount <Amt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the amounts of the document line.

**Amount <Amt>** contains the following **RemittanceAmount3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	307
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntAppldAmt>	[0..*]			308
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			308
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		308
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		308
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	308
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	309
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			309
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			309
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		310
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		310
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	310
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			310
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	311
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		311
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		311
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		311
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	312

#### 6.1.26.1.1.4.3.1 DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount specified is the exact amount due and payable to the creditor.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344](#)

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### 6.1.26.1.1.4.3.2 DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApIdAmt>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Amount of discount to be applied to the amount due and payable to the creditor.

**DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApIdAmt>** contains the following **DiscountAmountAndType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			308
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		308
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		308
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	308

#### 6.1.26.1.1.4.3.2.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of the amount.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **DiscountAmountType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		308
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		308

#### 6.1.26.1.1.4.3.2.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the amount type, in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalDiscountAmountType1Code" on page 354

#### 6.1.26.1.1.4.3.2.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the amount type, in a free-text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 372

#### 6.1.26.1.1.4.3.2.2 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money, which has been typed.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**6.1.26.1.1.4.3.3 CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of a credit note.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344](#)

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**6.1.26.1.1.4.3.4 TaxAmount <TaxAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Amount of the tax.

**TaxAmount <TaxAmt>** contains the following **TaxAmountAndType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			309
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		310
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		310
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	310

**6.1.26.1.1.4.3.4.1 Type <Tp>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of the amount.

Type **<Tp>** contains one of the following **TaxAmountType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or}	Code < <i>Cd</i> >	[1..1]	CodeSet		310
Or}	Proprietary < <i>Prtry</i> >	[1..1]	Text		310

#### 6.1.26.1.1.4.3.4.1.1 Code <*Cd*>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the amount type, in a coded form.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalTaxAmountType1Code" on page 358](#)

#### 6.1.26.1.1.4.3.4.1.2 Proprietary <*Prtry*>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the amount type, in a free-text form.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.26.1.1.4.3.4.2 Amount <*Amt*>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money, which has been typed.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344](#)

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.26.1.1.4.3.5 AdjustmentAmountAndReason <*AdjstmntAmtAndRsn*>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies detailed information on the amount and reason of the adjustment.

**AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>** contains the following  
**DocumentAdjustment1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	311
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		311
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		311
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		311

#### 6.1.26.1.1.4.3.5.1 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money of the document adjustment.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount"](#) on page 344

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.26.1.1.4.3.5.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether the adjustment must be subtracted or added to the total amount.

*Datatype:* ["CreditDebitCode"](#) on page 350

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

#### 6.1.26.1.1.4.3.5.3 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the adjustment.

*Datatype:* ["Max4Text"](#) on page 373

#### 6.1.26.1.1.4.3.5.4 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides further details on the document adjustment.

*Datatype:* ["Max140Text" on page 371](#)

#### **6.1.26.1.1.4.3.6 RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money remitted.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344](#)

##### **Constraints**

- ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### **6.1.26.1.2 ReferredDocumentAmount <RfrdDocAmt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the amounts of the referred document.

**ReferredDocumentAmount <RfrdDocAmt>** contains the following elements (see "RemittanceAmount2" on page 272 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	273
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>	[0..*]			274
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			274
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		274
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		274
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	274
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	275
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			275
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			275
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		276
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		276
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	276
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			276
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	277
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		277
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		277
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		277
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	278

#### 6.1.26.1.3 CreditorReferenceInformation <CdtrRefInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Reference information provided by the creditor to allow the identification of the underlying documents.

**CreditorReferenceInformation <CdtrRefInf>** contains the following elements (see "CreditorReferenceInformation2" on page 235 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			236
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			236
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		236
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		237
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		237
	Reference <Ref>	[0..1]	Text		237

#### 6.1.26.1.4 Invoicer <Invcr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the organisation issuing the invoice, when it is different from the creditor or ultimate creditor.

**Invoicer <Invcr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification135" on page 282 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		282
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		282
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		283
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	283
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		284

#### 6.1.26.1.5 Invoicee <Invcee>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the party to whom an invoice is issued, when it is different from the debtor or ultimate debtor.

**Invoicee <Invcee>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification135" on page 282 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		282
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		282
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		283
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	283
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		284

### 6.1.26.1.6 TaxRemittance <TaxRmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides remittance information about a payment made for tax-related purposes.

**TaxRemittance <TaxRmt>** contains the following elements (see "[TaxInformation7](#)" on page 329 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		329
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		329
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		330
	AdministrationZone <AdmstnZone>	[0..1]	Text		330
	ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		330
	Method <Mtd>	[0..1]	Text		330
	TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	331
	TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	331
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		331
	SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		331
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]	±		332

### 6.1.26.1.7 GarnishmentRemittance <GrnshmtRmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides remittance information about a payment for garnishment-related purposes.

**GarnishmentRemittance <GrnshmtRmt>** contains the following elements (see "[Garnishment3](#)" on page 316 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]			317
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			317
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		317
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		318
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		318
	Garnishee <Grnshee>	[0..1]	±		318
	GarnishmentAdministrator <GrnshmtAdmstr>	[0..1]	±		318
	ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		319
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		319
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	319
	FamilyMedicalInsuranceIndicator <FmlyMdclNsncInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		319
	EmployeeTerminationIndicator <MplyeeTermtnInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		320

#### 6.1.26.1.8 AdditionalRemittanceInformation <AddtlRmtlInf>

*Presence:* [0..3]

*Definition:* Additional information, in free text form, to complement the structured remittance information.

*Datatype:* ["Max140Text"](#) on page 371

#### 6.1.26.2 Garnishment3

*Definition:* Provides remittance information about a payment for garnishment-related purposes.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]			317
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			317
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		317
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		318
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		318
	Garnishee <Grnshee>	[0..1]	±		318
	GarnishmentAdministrator <GrnshmtAdmstr>	[0..1]	±		318
	ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		319
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		319
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	319
	FamilyMedicalInsuranceIndicator <FmlyMdclInsrncInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		319
	EmployeeTerminationIndicator <MplyeeTermntnInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		320

### 6.1.26.2.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of garnishment.

Type <Tp> contains the following **GarnishmentType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			317
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		317
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		318
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		318

#### 6.1.26.2.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Provides the type details of the garnishment.

CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry> contains one of the following **GarnishmentType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		317
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		318

#### 6.1.26.2.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

*Definition:* Garnishment type in a coded form.

Would suggest this to be an External Code List to contain:

GNCS Garnishment from a third party payer for Child Support

GNDP Garnishment from a Direct Payer for Child Support

GTPP Garnishment from a third party payer to taxing agency.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalGarnishmentType1Code" on page 356](#)

#### 6.1.26.2.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary identification of the type of garnishment.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.26.2.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the issuer of the garnishment type.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.26.2.2 Garnishee <Grnshee>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor, in this case, to the garnisher.

**Garnishee <Grnshee>** contains the following elements (see ["PartyIdentification135" on page 282](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		282
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		282
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		283
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	283
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		284

#### 6.1.26.2.3 GarnishmentAdministrator <GrnshmtAdmstr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party on the credit side of the transaction who administers the garnishment on behalf of the ultimate beneficiary.

**GarnishmentAdministrator <GrnshmtAdmstr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification135" on page 282 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		282
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		282
	Identification </d>	[0..1]	±		283
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	283
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		284

#### 6.1.26.2.4 ReferenceNumber <RefNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Reference information that is specific to the agency receiving the garnishment.

*Datatype:* ["Max140Text" on page 371](#)

#### 6.1.26.2.5 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date of payment which garnishment was taken from.

*Datatype:* ["ISODate" on page 366](#)

#### 6.1.26.2.6 RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money remitted for the referred document.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344](#)

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.26.2.7 FamilyMedicalInsuranceIndicator <FmlyMdclInsrnclnd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates if the person to whom the garnishment applies (that is, the ultimate debtor) has family medical insurance coverage available.

**Datatype:** One of the following values must be used (see "[TrueFalseIndicator](#)" on page 368):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 6.1.26.2.8 EmployeeTerminationIndicator <MployeeTermntnInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates if the employment of the person to whom the garnishment applies (that is, the ultimate debtor) has been terminated.

**Datatype:** One of the following values must be used (see "[TrueFalseIndicator](#)" on page 368):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 6.1.26.3 RemittanceLocationData1

*Definition:* Provides additional details on the remittance advice.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Method <Mtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		320
	ElectronicAddress <ElctrncAdr>	[0..1]	Text		321
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]			321
	Name <Nm>	[1..1]	Text		321
	Address <Adr>	[1..1]	±		321

##### 6.1.26.3.1 Method <Mtd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Method used to deliver the remittance advice information.

**Datatype:** "[RemittanceLocationMethod2Code](#)" on page 362

CodeName	Name	Definition
FAXI	Fax	Remittance advice information must be faxed.
EDIC	ElectronicDataInterchange	Remittance advice information must be sent through Electronic Data Interchange (EDI).
URID	UniformResourceIdentifier	Remittance advice information needs to be sent to a Uniform Resource Identifier (URI). URI is a compact string of characters that uniquely identify an abstract or physical resource. URI's are the super-set of identifiers, such as URLs, email addresses, ftp sites, etc, and as such, provide the syntax for all of the identification schemes.
EMAL	EMail	Remittance advice information must be sent through e-mail.

CodeName	Name	Definition
POST	Post	Remittance advice information must be sent through postal services.
SMSM	SMS	Remittance advice information must be sent through by phone as a short message service (SMS).

#### 6.1.26.3.2 ElectronicAddress <ElctrncAdr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Electronic address to which an agent is to send the remittance information.

*Datatype:* "Max2048Text" on page 372

#### 6.1.26.3.3 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Postal address to which an agent is to send the remittance information.

**PostalAddress <PstlAdr>** contains the following **NameAndAddress16** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[1..1]	Text		321
	Address <Adr>	[1..1]	±		321

##### 6.1.26.3.3.1 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name by which a party is known and is usually used to identify that party.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 371

##### 6.1.26.3.3.2 Address <Adr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Postal address of a party.

**Address <Adr>** contains the following elements (see "[PostalAddress24](#)" on page 292 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]			292
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		293
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		293
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		293
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		293
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		294
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		294
	BuildingName <BldgNm>	[0..1]	Text		294
	Floor <Flr>	[0..1]	Text		294
	PostBox <PstBx>	[0..1]	Text		294
	Room <Room>	[0..1]	Text		294
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		294
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		294
	TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>	[0..1]	Text		295
	DistrictName <DstrctNm>	[0..1]	Text		295
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		295
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	295
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		295

#### 6.1.26.4 RemittanceLocation7

*Definition:* Provides information on the remittance advice.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	RemittanceIdentification <RmtId>	[0..1]	Text		322
	RemittanceLocationDetails <RmtLctnDtls>	[0..*]	±		322

##### 6.1.26.4.1 RemittanceIdentification <RmtId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the initiating party, to unambiguously identify the remittance information sent separately from the payment instruction, such as a remittance advice.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

##### 6.1.26.4.2 RemittanceLocationDetails <RmtLctnDtls>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

**Definition:** Set of elements used to provide information on the location and/or delivery of the remittance information.

**RemittanceLocationDetails <RmtLctnDtls>** contains the following elements (see "RemittanceLocationData1" on page 320 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Method <Mtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		320
	ElectronicAddress <ElctrncAdr>	[0..1]	Text		321
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]			321
	Name <Nm>	[1..1]	Text		321
	Address <Adr>	[1..1]	±		321

## 6.1.26.5 RemittanceInformation16

**Definition:** Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Unstructured <Ustrd>	[0..*]	Text		323
	Structured <Strd>	[0..*]	±		323

### 6.1.26.5.1 Unstructured <Ustrd>

**Presence:** [0..\*]

**Definition:** Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system, in an unstructured form.

**Datatype:** "Max140Text" on page 371

### 6.1.26.5.2 Structured <Strd>

**Presence:** [0..\*]

**Definition:** Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system, in a structured form.

**Structured <Strd>** contains the following elements (see "StructuredRemittanceInformation16" on page 297 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ReferredDocumentInformation <RfrdDocInfo>	[0..*]			299
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			301
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			301
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		301
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		302
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		302
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		302
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		303
	LineDetails <LineDtls>	[0..*]			303
	Identification </d>	[1..*]			304
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			305
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			305
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		305
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		305
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		306
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		306
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		306
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		306
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]			306
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	307
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>	[0..*]			308
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			308
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		308
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		308
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	308
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	309
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			309
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			309
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		310
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		310

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	310
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			310
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	311
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		311
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		311
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		311
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	312
	ReferredDocumentAmount <RfrdDocAmt>	[0..1]	±		312
	CreditorReferenceInformation <CdtrRefInf>	[0..1]	±		313
	Invoicer <Invcr>	[0..1]	±		314
	Invoicee <Invcee>	[0..1]	±		314
	TaxRemittance <TaxRmt>	[0..1]	±		315
	GarnishmentRemittance <GrnshmtRmt>	[0..1]	±		315
	AdditionalRemittanceInformation <AddtlRmtInf>	[0..3]	Text		316

## 6.1.27 Securities Quantity

### 6.1.27.1 OriginalAndCurrentQuantities1

*Definition:* Original and current value of an asset-back instrument.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FaceAmount <FaceAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		325
	AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal>	[1..1]	Amount		325

#### 6.1.27.1.1 FaceAmount <FaceAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Quantity expressed as an amount representing the face amount, that is, the principal of a debt instrument.

*Datatype:* "ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344

#### 6.1.27.1.2 AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Quantity expressed as an amount representing the current amortised face amount of a bond, for example, a periodic reduction/increase of a bond's principal amount.

*Datatype:* "ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344

## 6.1.28 Status

### 6.1.28.1 PaymentReturnReason5

*Definition:* Provides further details on the reason of the return of the transaction.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalBankTransactionCode <OrgnBkTxCd>	[0..1]	±	C10, C11	326
	Originator <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		327
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]			327
{Or}	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		327
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		327
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		327

#### Constraints

- **ReturnReasonRule**

If Reason/Code is equal to NARR, then AdditionalInformation must be present.

```
On Condition
  /Reason/Code is equal to value 'NARR'
  And  /Reason is present
  And  /Reason/Code is present
Following Must be True
  /AdditionalInformation[*] Must be present
```

#### 6.1.28.1.1 OriginalBankTransactionCode <OrgnBkTxCd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Bank transaction code included in the original entry for the transaction.

*Impacted by:* C10 "DomainOrProprietaryRule", C11 "FamilyAndSubFamilyRule"

**OriginalBankTransactionCode <OrgnBkTxCd>** contains the following elements (see "[BankTransactionCodeStructure4](#)" on page 141 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Domain <Domn>	[0..1]	±		142
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..1]			142
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	Text		142
	Issuer <ssr>	[0..1]	Text		142

#### Constraints

- **DomainOrProprietaryRule**

Either Proprietary or Domain or both must be present.

Following Must be True  
 /Domain Must be present  
 Or /Proprietary Must be present

- **FamilyAndSubFamilyRule**

If a specific (non-generic) Family code is not present, then a specific (non-generic) SubFamily code is not allowed.

### 6.1.28.1.2 Originator <Orgtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that issues the return.

**Originator <Orgtr>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification135](#)" on page 282 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		282
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		282
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		283
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	283
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		284

### 6.1.28.1.3 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the return.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains one of the following **ReturnReason5Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		327
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		327

#### 6.1.28.1.3.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the return, as published in an external reason code list.

*Datatype:* "[ExternalReturnReason1Code](#)" on page 358

#### 6.1.28.1.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the return, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

### 6.1.28.1.4 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInfr>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Further details on the return reason.

*Datatype:* "Max105Text" on page 371

### 6.1.28.2 EntryStatus1Choice

*Definition:* Specifies the status of an entry on the books of the account servicer.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		328
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		328

#### 6.1.28.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Entry status, in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalEntryStatus1Code" on page 355

#### 6.1.28.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Entry status, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 372

## 6.1.29 System Identification

### 6.1.29.1 ClearingSystemIdentification2Choice

*Definition:* Choice of a clearing system identifier.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		328
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		328

#### 6.1.29.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a clearing system, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalClearingSystemIdentification1Code" on page 354

#### 6.1.29.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification code for a clearing system, that has not yet been identified in the list of clearing systems.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 372

## 6.1.30 Tax

### 6.1.30.1 TaxInformation7

*Definition:* Details about tax paid, or to be paid, to the government in accordance with the law, including pre-defined parameters such as thresholds and type of account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		329
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		329
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		330
	AdministrationZone <AdmstnZone>	[0..1]	Text		330
	ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		330
	Method <Mtd>	[0..1]	Text		330
	TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	331
	TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	331
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		331
	SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		331
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]	±		332

#### 6.1.30.1.1 Creditor <Cdtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party on the credit side of the transaction to which the tax applies.

**Creditor <Cdtr>** contains the following elements (see "[TaxParty1](#)" on page 342 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		342
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		342
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		342

#### 6.1.30.1.2 Debtor <Dbtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the party on the debit side of the transaction to which the tax applies.

**Debtor <Dbtr>** contains the following elements (see "[TaxParty2](#)" on page 341 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification < <i>TaxId</i> >	[0..1]	Text		341
	RegistrationIdentification < <i>RegnId</i> >	[0..1]	Text		341
	TaxType < <i>TaxTp</i> >	[0..1]	Text		341
	Authorisation < <i>Authstn</i> >	[0..1]			341
	Title < <i>Titl</i> >	[0..1]	Text		342
	Name < <i>Nm</i> >	[0..1]	Text		342

#### 6.1.30.1.3 UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor, in this case, to the taxing authority.

**UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>** contains the following elements (see "[TaxParty2](#)" on page 341 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification < <i>TaxId</i> >	[0..1]	Text		341
	RegistrationIdentification < <i>RegnId</i> >	[0..1]	Text		341
	TaxType < <i>TaxTp</i> >	[0..1]	Text		341
	Authorisation < <i>Authstn</i> >	[0..1]			341
	Title < <i>Titl</i> >	[0..1]	Text		342
	Name < <i>Nm</i> >	[0..1]	Text		342

#### 6.1.30.1.4 AdministrationZone <AdmstnZone>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Territorial part of a country to which the tax payment is related.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

#### 6.1.30.1.5 ReferenceNumber <RefNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Tax reference information that is specific to a taxing agency.

*Datatype:* "[Max140Text](#)" on page 371

#### 6.1.30.1.6 Method <Mtd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Method used to indicate the underlying business or how the tax is paid.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

### 6.1.30.1.7 TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total amount of money on which the tax is based.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### 6.1.30.1.8 TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total amount of money as result of the calculation of the tax.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### 6.1.30.1.9 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date by which tax is due.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 366

### 6.1.30.1.10 SequenceNumber <SeqNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Sequential number of the tax report.

*Datatype:* "Number" on page 369

### 6.1.30.1.11 Record <Rcrd>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Record of tax details.

**Record <Rcrd>** contains the following elements (see "[TaxRecord2](#)" on page 336 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	Text		336
	Category <Ctgy>	[0..1]	Text		337
	CategoryDetails <CtgyDtls>	[0..1]	Text		337
	DebtorStatus <DbtrSts>	[0..1]	Text		337
	CertificateIdentification <CertId>	[0..1]	Text		337
	FormsCode <FrmsCd>	[0..1]	Text		337
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]	±		337
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..1]			337
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		338
	TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	338
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	338
	Details <Dtls>	[0..*]	±		339
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		339

### 6.1.30.2 TaxInformation8

*Definition:* Details about tax paid, or to be paid, to the government in accordance with the law, including pre-defined parameters such as thresholds and type of account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		333
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		333
	AdministrationZone <AdmstnZone>	[0..1]	Text		333
	ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		333
	Method <Mtd>	[0..1]	Text		333
	TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	334
	TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	334
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		334
	SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		334
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]	±		335

### 6.1.30.2.1 Creditor <Cdtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party on the credit side of the transaction to which the tax applies.

**Creditor <Cdtr>** contains the following elements (see "[TaxParty1](#)" on page 342 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification < <i>TaxId</i> >	[0..1]	Text		342
	RegistrationIdentification < <i>RegnId</i> >	[0..1]	Text		342
	TaxType < <i>TaxTp</i> >	[0..1]	Text		342

### 6.1.30.2.2 Debtor <Dbtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party on the debit side of the transaction to which the tax applies.

**Debtor <Dbtr>** contains the following elements (see "[TaxParty2](#)" on page 341 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification < <i>TaxId</i> >	[0..1]	Text		341
	RegistrationIdentification < <i>RegnId</i> >	[0..1]	Text		341
	TaxType < <i>TaxTp</i> >	[0..1]	Text		341
	Authorisation < <i>Authstn</i> >	[0..1]			341
	Title < <i>Titl</i> >	[0..1]	Text		342
	Name < <i>Nm</i> >	[0..1]	Text		342

### 6.1.30.2.3 AdministrationZone <AdmstnZone>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Territorial part of a country to which the tax payment is related.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

### 6.1.30.2.4 ReferenceNumber <RefNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Tax reference information that is specific to a taxing agency.

*Datatype:* "[Max140Text](#)" on page 371

### 6.1.30.2.5 Method <Mtd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Method used to indicate the underlying business or how the tax is paid.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 372

### 6.1.30.2.6 TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total amount of money on which the tax is based.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### 6.1.30.2.7 TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total amount of money as result of the calculation of the tax.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### 6.1.30.2.8 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date by which tax is due.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 366

### 6.1.30.2.9 SequenceNumber <SeqNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Sequential number of the tax report.

*Datatype:* "Number" on page 369

### 6.1.30.2.10 Record <Rcrd>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Record of tax details.

**Record <Rcrd>** contains the following elements (see "[TaxRecord2](#)" on page 336 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	Text		336
	Category <Ctgy>	[0..1]	Text		337
	CategoryDetails <CtgyDtls>	[0..1]	Text		337
	DebtorStatus <DbtrSts>	[0..1]	Text		337
	CertificateIdentification <CertId>	[0..1]	Text		337
	FormsCode <FrmsCd>	[0..1]	Text		337
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]	±		337
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..1]			337
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		338
	TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	338
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	338
	Details <Dtls>	[0..*]	±		339
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		339

### 6.1.30.3 TaxRecordDetails2

*Definition:* Provides information on the individual tax amount(s) per period of the tax record.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]	±		335
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	336

### 6.1.30.3.1 Period <Prd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the period of time related to the tax payment.

**Period <Prd>** contains the following elements (see "[TaxPeriod2](#)" on page 339 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Date		339
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		339
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		340

### 6.1.30.3.2 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Underlying tax amount related to the specified period.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### 6.1.30.4 TaxRecord2

*Definition:* Set of elements used to define the tax record.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	Text		336
	Category <Ctgy>	[0..1]	Text		337
	CategoryDetails <CtgyDtls>	[0..1]	Text		337
	DebtorStatus <DbtrSts>	[0..1]	Text		337
	CertificateIdentification <CertId>	[0..1]	Text		337
	FormsCode <FrmsCd>	[0..1]	Text		337
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]	±		337
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..1]			337
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		338
	TaxableBaseAmount <Taxbl/BaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	338
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	338
	Details <Dtls>	[0..*]	±		339
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInfr>	[0..1]	Text		339

#### 6.1.30.4.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* High level code to identify the type of tax details.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 372

#### 6.1.30.4.2 Category <Ctgy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the tax code as published by the tax authority.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.30.4.3 CategoryDetails <CtgyDtls>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides further details of the category tax code.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.30.4.4 DebtorStatus <DbtrSts>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Code provided by local authority to identify the status of the party that has drawn up the settlement document.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.30.4.5 CertificateIdentification <CertId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification number of the tax report as assigned by the taxing authority.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.30.4.6 FormsCode <FrmsCd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies, in a coded form, on which template the tax report is to be provided.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.30.4.7 Period <Prd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the period of time related to the tax payment.

**Period <Prd>** contains the following elements (see ["TaxPeriod2" on page 339](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Date		339
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		339
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		340

#### 6.1.30.4.8 TaxAmount <TaxAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide information on the amount of the tax record.

**TaxAmount <TaxAmt>** contains the following **TaxAmount2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		338
	TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	338
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	338
	Details <Dtls>	[0..*]	±		339

#### 6.1.30.4.8.1 Rate <Rate>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Rate used to calculate the tax.

*Datatype:* ["PercentageRate" on page 370](#)

#### 6.1.30.4.8.2 TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money on which the tax is based.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344](#)

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.30.4.8.3 TotalAmount <TtlAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total amount that is the result of the calculation of the tax for the record.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 344](#)

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3)

contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.1.30.4.8.4 Details <DtIs>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the tax period and amount.

**Details <DtIs>** contains the following elements (see "[TaxRecordDetails2](#)" on page 335 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]	±		335
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	336

#### 6.1.30.4.9 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInfr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Further details of the tax record.

*Datatype:* "[Max140Text](#)" on page 371

### 6.1.30.5 TaxPeriod2

*Definition:* Period of time details related to the tax payment.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Date		339
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		339
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		340

#### 6.1.30.5.1 Year <Yr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Year related to the tax payment.

*Datatype:* "[ISODate](#)" on page 366

#### 6.1.30.5.2 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the period related to the tax payment.

*Datatype:* "[TaxRecordPeriod1Code](#)" on page 362

CodeName	Name	Definition
MM01	FirstMonth	Tax is related to the second month of the period.
MM02	SecondMonth	Tax is related to the first month of the period.
MM03	ThirdMonth	Tax is related to the third month of the period.
MM04	FourthMonth	Tax is related to the fourth month of the period.
MM05	FifthMonth	Tax is related to the fifth month of the period.
MM06	SixthMonth	Tax is related to the sixth month of the period.
MM07	SeventhMonth	Tax is related to the seventh month of the period.
MM08	EighthMonth	Tax is related to the eighth month of the period.
MM09	NinthMonth	Tax is related to the ninth month of the period.
MM10	TenthMonth	Tax is related to the tenth month of the period.
MM11	EleventhMonth	Tax is related to the eleventh month of the period.
MM12	TwelfthMonth	Tax is related to the twelfth month of the period.
QTR1	FirstQuarter	Tax is related to the first quarter of the period.
QTR2	SecondQuarter	Tax is related to the second quarter of the period.
QTR3	ThirdQuarter	Tax is related to the third quarter of the period.
QTR4	FourthQuarter	Tax is related to the forth quarter of the period.
HLF1	FirstHalf	Tax is related to the first half of the period.
HLF2	SecondHalf	Tax is related to the second half of the period.

### 6.1.30.5.3 FromToDate <FrToDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Range of time between a start date and an end date for which the tax report is provided.

**FromToDate <FrToDt>** contains the following elements (see "[DatePeriod2](#)" on page [233](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate < <i>FrDt</i> >	[1..1]	Date		233
	ToDate < <i>ToDt</i> >	[1..1]	Date		234

### 6.1.30.6 TaxParty2

*Definition:* Details about the entity involved in the tax paid or to be paid.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification < <i>TaxId</i> >	[0..1]	Text		341
	RegistrationIdentification < <i>RegnId</i> >	[0..1]	Text		341
	TaxType < <i>TaxTp</i> >	[0..1]	Text		341
	Authorisation < <i>Authstn</i> >	[0..1]			341
	Title < <i>Titl</i> >	[0..1]	Text		342
	Name < <i>Nm</i> >	[0..1]	Text		342

#### 6.1.30.6.1 TaxIdentification <TaxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Tax identification number of the debtor.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page [372](#)

#### 6.1.30.6.2 RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by an organisation, to unambiguously identify a party.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page [372](#)

#### 6.1.30.6.3 TaxType <TaxTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Type of tax payer.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page [372](#)

#### 6.1.30.6.4 Authorisation <Authstn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Details of the authorised tax paying party.

**Authorisation <Authstn>** contains the following **TaxAuthorisation1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Title <Titl>	[0..1]	Text		342
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		342

#### 6.1.30.6.4.1 Title <Titl>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Title or position of debtor or the debtor's authorised representative.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.30.6.4.2 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the debtor or the debtor's authorised representative.

*Datatype:* ["Max140Text" on page 371](#)

### 6.1.30.7 TaxParty1

*Definition:* Details about the entity involved in the tax paid or to be paid.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		342
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		342
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		342

#### 6.1.30.7.1 TaxIdentification <TaxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Tax identification number of the creditor.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.30.7.2 RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by an organisation, to unambiguously identify a party.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

#### 6.1.30.7.3 TaxType <TaxTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Type of tax payer.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 372](#)

## 6.2 Message Datatypes

### 6.2.1 Amount

#### 6.2.1.1 ActiveCurrencyAndAmount

**Definition:** A number of monetary units specified in an active currency where the unit of currency is explicit and compliant with ISO 4217.

**Type:** Amount

This data type contains the following XML attribute:

Name	Attribute XML Name	Datatype
Currency	Ccy	"ActiveCurrencyCode" on page 345

#### Format

minInclusive	0
totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	5

#### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.2.1.2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAnd13DecimalAmount

**Definition:** A number of monetary units specified in an active or a historic currency where the unit of currency is explicit and compliant with ISO 4217. The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) is not checked as per ISO 4217: It must be lesser than or equal to 13.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**Type:** Amount

This data type contains the following XML attribute:

Name	Attribute XML Name	Datatype
Currency	Ccy	"ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 345

#### Format

minInclusive	0
--------------	---

totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	13

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### 6.2.1.3 ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount

*Definition:* A number of monetary units specified in an active or a historic currency where the unit of currency is explicit and compliant with ISO 4217.

*Type:* Amount

This data type contains the following XML attribute:

Name	Attribute XML Name	Datatype
Currency	Ccy	"ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 345

**Format**

minInclusive	0
totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	5

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### 6.2.1.4 ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount

*Definition:* Number of monetary units specified in a currency where the unit of currency is implied by the context and compliant with ISO 4217. The decimal separator is a dot.

Note: a zero amount is considered a positive amount.

*Type:* Amount

**Format**

minInclusive	0
totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	5

## 6.2.2 CodeSet

### 6.2.2.1 ActiveCurrencyCode

*Definition:* A code allocated to a currency by a Maintenance Agency under an international identification scheme as described in the latest edition of the international standard ISO 4217 "Codes for the representation of currencies and funds".

Type: CodeSet

**Format**

pattern	[A-Z]{3,3}
---------	------------

**Constraints**

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### 6.2.2.2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode

*Definition:* A code allocated to a currency by a Maintenance Agency under an international identification scheme, as described in the latest edition of the international standard ISO 4217 "Codes for the representation of currencies and funds".

Type: CodeSet

**Format**

pattern	[A-Z]{3,3}
---------	------------

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### 6.2.2.3 AddressType2Code

*Definition:* Specifies the type of address.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
ADDR	Postal	Address is the complete postal address.
PBOX	POBox	Address is a postal office (PO) box.
HOME	Residential	Address is the home address.
BIZZ	Business	Address is the business address.
MLTO	MailTo	Address is the address to which mail is sent.
DLVY	DeliveryTo	Address is the address to which delivery is to take place.

#### 6.2.2.4 AttendanceContext1Code

*Definition:* Human attendance at the POI location during the transaction.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
ATTD	Attended	Attended payment, with an attendant.
SATT	SemiAttended	Semi-attended, including self checkout. An attendant supervises several payment, and could be called to help the cardholder.
UATT	Unattended	Unattended payment, no attendant present.

#### 6.2.2.5 AuthenticationEntity1Code

*Definition:* Entity or object in charge of verifying the cardholder authenticity.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
ICCD	ICC	Application in the chip card (Integrated Circuit Card), for instance an offline PIN verification.
AGNT	AuthorisedAgent	Authorisation agent of the issuer.
MERC	Merchant	Merchant (for example signature verification by the attendant).

#### 6.2.2.6 AuthenticationMethod1Code

*Definition:* Method used to authenticate a cardholder.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
UKNW	UnknownMethod	Authentication method is performed unknown.
BYPS	Bypass	Authentication bypassed by the merchant.

CodeName	Name	Definition
NPIN	OnLinePIN	On-line PIN authentication (Personal Identification Number).
FPIN	OfflinePIN	Off-line PIN authentication (Personal Identification Number).
CPSG	SignatureCapture	Electronic signature capture (handwritten signature).
PPSG	PaperSignature	Handwritten paper signature.
MANU	ManualVerification	Manual verification, for example passport or drivers license.
MERC	MerchantAuthentication	Merchant-related authentication.
SCRT	SecureCertificate	Electronic commerce transaction secured with the X.509 certificate of a customer.
SNCT	SecureNoCertificate	Secure electronic transaction without cardholder certificate.
SCNL	SecuredChannel	Channel-encrypted transaction.

### 6.2.2.7 CardDataReading1Code

*Definition:* Type of reading of the card data.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
TAGC	Tag	Tag reading capabilities (RFID, etc.).
PHYS	Physical	Keyboard entry or OCR reading of embossing or printed data, either at time of transaction or after the event.
BRCD	BarCode	Bar code.
MGST	MagneticStripe	Magnetic stripe.
CICC	ICC	ICC (Integrated Circuit Card) with contact containing software applications conform to ISO 7816.
DFLE	AccountData	Account data on file.
CTLS	ProximityReader	Contactless proximity reader.
ECTL	EMVProximityReader	Contactless proximity reader, with application conform to the standard EMV (standard initiated by Europay, Mastercard and Visa).

### 6.2.2.8 CardholderVerificationCapability1Code

*Definition:* Cardholder verification capabilities of the POI (Personal Identification Number) performing the transaction.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MNSG	ManualSignature	Manual signature verification.
NPIN	OnLinePIN	Online PIN (Personal Identification Number).
FCPN	OfflinePINClear	Offline PIN in clear (Personal Identification Number).
FEPN	OfflinePINEncrypted	Offline PIN encrypted (Personal Identification Number).
FDSG	OfflineDigitalSignature	Offline digital signature analysis.
FBIO	OfflineBiometrics	Offline biometrics.
MNVR	ManualVerification	Other manual verification, for example passport or drivers license.
FBIG	OfflineBiographics	Offline biographics.
APKI	AccountDigitalSignature	Account based digital signature.
PKIS	PKISignature	PKI (Public Key Infrastructure) based digital signature.
CHDT	CardholderData	Cardholder authentication data.
SCEC	SecureElectronicCommerce	Three domain secure (three domain secure authentication of the cardholder).

### 6.2.2.9 CardPaymentServiceType2Code

*Definition:* Service provided by the card payment transaction, in addition to the main service.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
AGGR	Aggregation	Aggregation of low payments.
DCCV	DCC	Dynamic currency conversion (DCC).
GRTT	Gratuity	Card payment with gratuity.
INSP	Instalment	Instalment payment.
LOYT	Loyalty	Loyalty services.
NRES	NoShow	No show after reservation.
PUCO	PurchaseCorporate	Purchase and corporate data.
RECP	RecurringPayment	Recurring payment.
SOAF	SolicitedAvailableFunds	Solicited available funds.
UNAF	UnsolicitedAvailableFunds	Unsolicited available funds.
VCAU	VoiceAuthorisation	Voice authorisation.

### 6.2.2.10 ChargeBearerType1Code

*Definition:* Specifies which party(ies) will pay charges due for processing of the instruction.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
DEBT	BorneByDebtor	All transaction charges are to be borne by the debtor.
CRED	BorneByCreditor	All transaction charges are to be borne by the creditor.
SHAR	Shared	In a credit transfer context, means that transaction charges on the sender side are to be borne by the debtor, transaction charges on the receiver side are to be borne by the creditor. In a direct debit context, means that transaction charges on the sender side are to be borne by the creditor, transaction charges on the receiver side are to be borne by the debtor.
SLEV	FollowingServiceLevel	Charges are to be applied following the rules agreed in the service level and/or scheme.

### 6.2.2.11 CopyDuplicate1Code

*Definition:* Specifies if this document is a copy, a duplicate, or a duplicate of a copy.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
CODU	CopyDuplicate	Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes and the message is a duplicate of a message previously sent.
COPY	Copy	Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes.
DUPL	Duplicate	Message is for information/confirmation purposes. It is a duplicate of a message previously sent.

### 6.2.2.12 CountryCode

*Definition:* Code to identify a country, a dependency, or another area of particular geopolitical interest, on the basis of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

*Type:* CodeSet

#### Format

pattern [A-Z]{2,2}

**Constraints****• Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

**6.2.2.13 CreditDebitCode**

*Definition:* Specifies if an operation is an increase or a decrease.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

**6.2.2.14 CSCManagement1Code**

*Definition:* CSC (Card Security Code) management associated with the transaction.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
PRST	CSCPresent	Card security code present.
BYPS	CSCByPass	Card security code by-passed or not provided by the merchant.
UNRD	CSCUnread	Card security code unreadable.
NCSC	NoCSC	No card security code imprint.

**6.2.2.15 DocumentType3Code**

*Definition:* Specifies a type of financial or commercial document.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
RADM	RemittanceAdviceMessage	Document is a remittance advice sent separately from the current transaction.
RPIN	RelatedPaymentInstruction	Document is a linked payment instruction to which the current payment instruction is related, for example, in a cover scenario.
FXDR	ForeignExchangeDealReference	Document is a pre-agreed or pre-arranged foreign exchange transaction to which the payment transaction refers.
DISP	DispatchAdvice	Document is a dispatch advice.
PUOR	PurchaseOrder	Document is a purchase order.
SCOR	StructuredCommunicationReference	Document is a structured communication reference provided by the creditor to identify the referred transaction.

### 6.2.2.16 DocumentType6Code

*Definition:* Specifies a type of financial or commercial document.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MSIN	MeteredServiceInvoice	Document is an invoice claiming payment for the supply of metered services, for example gas or electricity supplied to a fixed meter.
CNFA	CreditNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a credit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
DNFA	DebitNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a debit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
CINV	CommercialInvoice	Document is an invoice.
CREN	CreditNote	Document is a credit note.
DEBN	DebitNote	Document is a debit note.
HIRI	HireInvoice	Document is an invoice for the hiring of human resources or renting goods or equipment.
SBIN	SelfBilledInvoice	Document is an invoice issued by the debtor.
CMCN	CommercialContract	Document is an agreement between the parties, stipulating the terms and conditions of the delivery of goods or services.
SOAC	StatementOfAccount	Document is a statement of the transactions posted to the debtor's account at the supplier.
DISP	DispatchAdvice	Document is a dispatch advice.
BOLD	BillOfLading	Document is a shipping notice.
VCHR	Voucher	Document is an electronic payment document.
AROI	AccountReceivableOpenItem	Document is a payment that applies to a specific source document.
TSUT	TradeServicesUtilityTransaction	Document is a transaction identifier as assigned by the Trade Services Utility.
PUOR	PurchaseOrder	Document is a purchase order.

### 6.2.2.17 ExternalAccountIdentification1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the external account identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**6.2.2.18 ExternalBalanceSubType1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the balance sub-type, as published in an external balance sub-type code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**6.2.2.19 ExternalBalanceType1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the balance type, as published in an external balance type code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**6.2.2.20 ExternalBankTransactionDomain1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the bank transaction code domain, as published in an external bank transaction code domain code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**6.2.2.21 ExternalBankTransactionFamily1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the bank transaction code family, as published in an external bank transaction code family code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**6.2.2.22 ExternalBankTransactionSubFamily1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the bank transaction code sub-family, as published in an external bank transaction code sub-family code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**6.2.2.23 ExternalCardTransactionCategory1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the category of card transaction in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**6.2.2.24 ExternalCashAccountType1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the nature, or use, of the cash account in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**6.2.2.25 ExternalChargeType1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the nature, or use, of the charges in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

Type: CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

### **6.2.2.26 ExternalClearingSystemIdentification1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the clearing system identification code, as published in an external clearing system identification code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

Type: CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	5

### **6.2.2.27 ExternalCreditLineType1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the external credit line type code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code set published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

Type: CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

### **6.2.2.28 ExternalDiscountAmountType1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the nature, or use, of the amount in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

Type: CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
-----------	---

maxLength	4
-----------	---

### 6.2.2.29 ExternalDocumentLineType1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the document line type as published in an external document type code list.

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

### 6.2.2.30 ExternalEntryStatus1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the status of an entry on the books of the account servicer, as published in an external code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

### 6.2.2.31 ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentification1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the external financial institution identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

### 6.2.2.32 ExternalFinancialInstrumentIdentificationType1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the external financial instrument identification type scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**6.2.2.33 ExternalGarnishmentType1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the garnishment type as published in an external document type code list.

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**6.2.2.34 ExternalLocalInstrument1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the external local instrument code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 35 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	35

**6.2.2.35 ExternalOrganisationIdentification1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the external organisation identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**6.2.2.36 ExternalPersonIdentification1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the external person identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

Type: CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

### **6.2.2.37 ExternalProxyAccountType1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the external proxy account type code, as published in the proxy account type external code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

Type: CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

### **6.2.2.38 ExternalPurpose1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the external purpose code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

Type: CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

### **6.2.2.39 ExternalReportingSource1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the reporting source, as published in an external reporting source code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

Type: CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

### **6.2.2.40 ExternalRePresentmentReason1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the external representation reason code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters. The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

Type: CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

#### **6.2.2.41 ExternalReturnReason1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the return reason, as published in an external return reason code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

Type: CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

#### **6.2.2.42 ExternalTaxAmountType1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the nature, or use, of the amount in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

Type: CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

#### **6.2.2.43 ExternalTechnicalInputChannel1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the technical input channel, as published in an external technical input channel code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

Type: CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

#### **6.2.2.44 FloorLimitType1Code**

*Definition:* Indicates whether the floor limit applies to credit, to debit or to both credit and debit entries.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRED	Credit	Floor limit applies to credit entries.
DEBT	Debit	Floor limit applies to debit entries.
BOTH	Both	Floor limit applies to both credit and debit entries.

#### 6.2.2.45 InterestType1Code

*Definition:* Indicates which type of interest is applied to a balance left on an account.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
INDY	IntraDay	During or within a business day.
OVRN	OverNight	Period of time between the end of a business day and the start of the next business day (usually the day after).

#### 6.2.2.46 ISO2ALanguageCode

*Definition:* Identification of the language name according to the ISO 639-1 codes. The type is validated by the list of values coded with two alphabetic characters, defined in the standard.

*Type:* CodeSet

##### Format

pattern [a-z]{2,2}

#### 6.2.2.47 NamePrefix2Code

*Definition:* Specifies the terms used to formally address a person.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
DOCT	Doctor	Title of the person is Doctor or Dr.
MADM	Madam	Title of the person is Madam.
MISS	Miss	Title of the person is Miss.
MIST	Mister	Title of the person is Mister or Mr.
MIKS	GenderNeutral	Title of the person is gender neutral (Mx).

#### 6.2.2.48 OnLineCapability1Code

*Definition:* On-line and off-line capabilities of the POI (Point Of Interaction).

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
OFLN	OffLine	Off-line only capable.
ONLN	OnLine	On-line only capable.

CodeName	Name	Definition
SMON	SemiOffLine	Off-line capable with possible on-line requests to the acquirer.

#### 6.2.2.49 PartyType3Code

*Definition:* Identification of the type of entity involved in a transaction.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
OPOI	OriginatingPOI	Point Of Interaction initiating the card payment transaction.
MERC	Merchant	Merchant providing goods and service in the card payment transaction.
ACCP	Acceptor	Card acceptor, party accepting the card and presenting transaction data to the acquirer.
ITAG	IntermediaryAgent	Party acting on behalf of other parties to process or forward data to other parties.
ACQR	Acquirer	Entity acquiring card transactions.
CISS	CardIssuer	Party that issues cards.
DLIS	DelegateIssuer	Party to whom the card issuer delegates to authorise card payment transactions.

#### 6.2.2.50 PartyType4Code

*Definition:* Entity assigning an identification (for example merchant, acceptor, acquirer, tax authority, etc.).

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MERC	Merchant	Merchant providing goods and service in the card payment transaction.
ACCP	Acceptor	Card acceptor, party accepting the card and presenting transaction data to the acquirer.
ITAG	IntermediaryAgent	Party acting on behalf of other parties to process or forward data to other parties.
ACQR	Acquirer	Entity acquiring card transactions.
CISS	CardIssuer	Party that issues cards.
TAXH	TaxAuthority	Tax authority.

#### 6.2.2.51 POIComponentType1Code

*Definition:* Generic component type belonging to a POI (Point of Interaction) Terminal.

*Type:* CodeSet

<b>CodeName</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Definition</b>
SOFT	Soft	Payment or other software application.
EMVK	EMVKernel	EMV application kernel (EMV is the chip card specifications initially defined by Eurocard, Mastercard and Visa).
EMVO	EMVLevel1	EMV physical interface (EMV is the chip card specifications initially defined by Eurocard, Mastercard and Visa).
MRIT	MerchantInterface	Merchant interface.
CHIT	CardholderInterface	Cardholder Interface.
SECM	SecureModule	Security module.
PEDV	PINEntryDevice	Personal identification number (or PIN) entry device (PED).

### 6.2.2.52 PreferredContactMethod1Code

*Definition:* Preferred method used to reach the individual contact within an organisation.

*Type:* CodeSet

<b>CodeName</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Definition</b>
LETT	Letter	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per letter.
MAIL	Email	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per email.
PHON	Phone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per phone.
FAXX	Fax	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per fax.
CELL	MobileOrCellPhone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per mobile or cell phone.

### 6.2.2.53 PriceValueType1Code

*Definition:* Specifies a type of value of the price.

*Type:* CodeSet

<b>CodeName</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Definition</b>
DISC	Discount	Price expressed as a number of percentage points below par, for example, a discount price of 2.0% equals a price of 98 when par is 100.
PREM	Premium	Price expressed as a number of percentage points above par, for example, a premium price of 2.0% equals a price of 102 when par is 100.
PARV	Par	Price is the face amount.

### 6.2.2.54 QueryType3Code

*Definition:* Specifies the nature of the request, that is whether all information be returned or only information that has changed since the last similar request was returned.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
ALLL	All	Specifies that the query requests that all matching items be returned.
CHNG	Changed	Specifies that the query requests that only new matching items since the last similar query be returned.
MODF	Modified	Specifies that the query requests that only items that have changed since the last query be returned.

### 6.2.2.55 RemittanceLocationMethod2Code

*Definition:* Specifies the method used to deliver the remittance advice information.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
FAXI	Fax	Remittance advice information must be faxed.
EDIC	ElectronicDataInterchange	Remittance advice information must be sent through Electronic Data Interchange (EDI).
URID	UniformResourceIdentifier	Remittance advice information needs to be sent to a Uniform Resource Identifier (URI). URI is a compact string of characters that uniquely identify an abstract or physical resource. URI's are the super-set of identifiers, such as URLs, email addresses, ftp sites, etc, and as such, provide the syntax for all of the identification schemes.
EMAL	EMail	Remittance advice information must be sent through e-mail.
POST	Post	Remittance advice information must be sent through postal services.
SMSM	SMS	Remittance advice information must be sent through by phone as a short message service (SMS).

### 6.2.2.56 TaxRecordPeriod1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the period related to the tax payment.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MM01	FirstMonth	Tax is related to the second month of the period.

<b>CodeName</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Definition</b>
MM02	SecondMonth	Tax is related to the first month of the period.
MM03	ThirdMonth	Tax is related to the third month of the period.
MM04	FourthMonth	Tax is related to the fourth month of the period.
MM05	FifthMonth	Tax is related to the fifth month of the period.
MM06	SixthMonth	Tax is related to the sixth month of the period.
MM07	SeventhMonth	Tax is related to the seventh month of the period.
MM08	EighthMonth	Tax is related to the eighth month of the period.
MM09	NinthMonth	Tax is related to the ninth month of the period.
MM10	TenthMonth	Tax is related to the tenth month of the period.
MM11	EleventhMonth	Tax is related to the eleventh month of the period.
MM12	TwelfthMonth	Tax is related to the twelfth month of the period.
QTR1	FirstQuarter	Tax is related to the first quarter of the period.
QTR2	SecondQuarter	Tax is related to the second quarter of the period.
QTR3	ThirdQuarter	Tax is related to the third quarter of the period.
QTR4	FourthQuarter	Tax is related to the forth quarter of the period.
HLF1	FirstHalf	Tax is related to the first half of the period.
HLF2	SecondHalf	Tax is related to the second half of the period.

### 6.2.2.57 TransactionChannel1Code

*Definition:* Identifies the type of the communication channels used by the cardholder to the acceptor system.

*Type:* CodeSet

<b>CodeName</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Definition</b>
MAIL	MailOrder	Mail order.
TLPH	TelephoneOrder	Telephone order.
ECOM	ElectronicCommerce	Electronic commerce.
TVPY	TelevisionPayment	Payment on television.

### 6.2.2.58 TransactionEnvironment1Code

*Definition:* Indicates the environment of the transaction.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MERC	Merchant	Merchant environment.
PRIV	Private	Private environment.
PUBL	Public	Public environment.

### 6.2.2.59 UnitOfMeasure1Code

*Definition:* Unit of measure of the item purchased.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
PIEC	Piece	Standard length of cloth, wallpaper, as an item for sale or amount of a substance.
TONS	Ton	Measure of weight, in Britain 2240lb (long ton)and in the US 2000lb (short ton).
FOOT	Foot	Unit of length equal to 1/3 yard.
GBGA	GBGallon	Unit of volume that is equal to 8 pints.
USGA	USGallon	Unit of volume that is equal to 8 pints.
GRAM	Gram	Unit of measure that is equal to a 1, 000th of a kilo.
INCH	Inch	Measure of length equal to 2.54 cm.
KILO	Kilogram	Basic unit of mass in the SI system, 1000 grams.
PUND	Pound	Unit of weight equal to 0.454 kilograms.
METR	Metre	Unit of length in the metric system, equal to 39.37 inches.
CMET	Centimetre	Unit of measure that is equal to one hundredth of a metre.
MMET	Millimetre	Unit of measure that is a thousandth of one metre.
LITR	Litre	Unit of volume that is equal to a thousand cubic centimetres.
CELI	Centilitre	Unit of volume that is equal to one hundredth of a litre.
MILI	Millilitre	Unit of volume that is equal to one thousandth of a litre.
GBOU	GBOunce	Unit of weight equal to a sixteenth of a pound.
USOU	USOunce	Unit of weight equal to a sixteenth of a pound.

CodeName	Name	Definition
GBQA	GBQuart	Unit of volume that is equal to 2 pints.
USQA	USQuart	Unit of volume that is equal to 2 pints.
GBPI	GBPint	Unit of volume that is equal to 568 cubic centimetres.
USPI	USPint	Unit of volume that is equal to 473 cubic centimetres.
MILE	Mile	Unit of length equal to 1, 760 yards.
KMET	Kilometre	Unit of measure that is equal to 1, 000 meters.
YARD	Yard	Unit of length equal to 3 feet or 0.9144 metre.
SQKI	SquareKilometre	Measure of a surface, one kilometre by one kilometre.
HECT	Hectare	Unit of measure that is equal to 10, 000 square meters.
ARES	Are	Unit of measure equal to a 100 square meters.
SMET	SquareMetre	Measure of a surface, one metre by one metre.
SCMT	SquareCentimetre	Measure of a surface, one centimetre by one centimetre.
SMIL	SquareMillimetre	Measure of a surface, one millimetre by one millimetre.
SQMI	SquareMile	Measure of a surface, one mile by one mile.
SQYA	SquareYard	Measure of a surface, one yard by one yard.
SQFO	SquareFoot	Measure of a surface, one foot by one foot.
SQIN	SquareInch	Measure of a surface, one inch by one inch.
ACRE	Acre	Unit of measure equal to 4, 840 square yards.

### 6.2.2.60 UserInterface2Code

*Definition:* Type of interface to display a message.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MDSP	MerchantDisplay	Merchant display or interface.
CDSP	CardholderDisplay	Cardholder display or interface.

## 6.2.3 Date

### 6.2.3.1 ISODate

*Definition:* A particular point in the progression of time in a calendar year expressed in the YYYY-MM-DD format. This representation is defined in "XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition - W3C Recommendation 28 October 2004" which is aligned with ISO 8601.

*Type:* Date

## 6.2.4 DateTime

### 6.2.4.1 ISODATETIME

*Definition:* A particular point in the progression of time defined by a mandatory date and a mandatory time component, expressed in either UTC time format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sssZ), local time with UTC offset format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sss+/-hh:mm), or local time format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sss). These representations are defined in "XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition - W3C Recommendation 28 October 2004" which is aligned with ISO 8601.

Note on the time format:

1) beginning / end of calendar day

00:00:00 = the beginning of a calendar day

24:00:00 = the end of a calendar day

2) fractions of second in time format

Decimal fractions of seconds may be included. In this case, the involved parties shall agree on the maximum number of digits that are allowed.

*Type:* DateTime

## 6.2.5 IdentifierSet

### 6.2.5.1 AnyBICDec2014Identifier

*Definition:* Code allocated to a financial or non-financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority, as described in ISO 9362: 2014 - "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

*Type:* IdentifierSet

*Identification scheme:* SWIFT; AnyBICIdentifier

#### Format

pattern	[A-Z0-9]{4,4}[A-Z]{2,2}[A-Z0-9]{2,2}([A-Z0-9]{3,3}){0,1}
---------	--

**Constraints**

- **AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### **6.2.5.2 BICFIIdentifier**

*Definition:* Code allocated to a financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority as described in ISO 9362: 2014 - "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

*Type:* IdentifierSet

*Identification scheme:* SWIFT; BICIdentifier

**Format**

pattern	[A-Z0-9]{4,4}[A-Z]{2,2}[A-Z0-9]{2,2}{[A-Z0-9]{3,3}}{0,1}
---------	--

**Constraints**

- **BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### **6.2.5.3 IBANIdentifier**

*Definition:* An identifier used internationally by financial institutions to uniquely identify the account of a customer at a financial institution, as described in the latest edition of the international standard ISO 13616: 2007 - "Banking and related financial services - International Bank Account Number (IBAN)".

*Type:* IdentifierSet

*Identification scheme:* National Banking Association; International Bank Account Number (ISO 13616)

**Format**

pattern	[A-Z]{2,2}[0-9]{2,2}[a-zA-Z0-9]{1,30}
---------	---------------------------------------

**Constraints**

- **IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

### **6.2.5.4 ISINIdentifier**

*Definition:* International Securities Identification Number (ISIN). A numbering system designed by the United Nation's International Organisation for Standardisation (ISO). The ISIN is composed of a 2-character prefix representing the country of issue, followed by the national security number (if one exists), and a check digit. Each country has a national numbering agency that assigns ISIN numbers for securities in that country.

*Type:* IdentifierSet

*Identification scheme:* ANNA; ISINIdentifier

**Format**

pattern [A-Z]{2,2}[A-Z0-9]{9,9}[0-9]{1,1}

**6.2.5.5 LEIdentifier**

*Definition:* Legal Entity Identifier is a code allocated to a party as described in ISO 17442 "Financial Services - Legal Entity Identifier (LEI)".

*Type:* IdentifierSet

*Identification scheme:* Global LEI System; LEIdentifier

**Format**

pattern [A-Z0-9]{18,18}[0-9]{2,2}

**6.2.5.6 UUIDv4Identifier**

*Definition:* Universally Unique IDentifier (UUID) version 4, as described in IETC RFC 4122 "Universally Unique IDentifier (UUID) URN Namespace".

*Type:* IdentifierSet

*Identification scheme:* RFC4122; UUIDv4

**Format**

pattern [a-f0-9]{8}-[a-f0-9]{4}-4[a-f0-9]{3}-[89ab][a-f0-9]{3}-[a-f0-9]{12}

**6.2.6 Indicator****6.2.6.1 ChargeIncludedIndicator**

*Definition:* Indicates whether charges have already been included.

*Type:* Indicator

*Meaning When True:* Included

*Meaning When False:* Pre-advised

**6.2.6.2 TrueFalseIndicator**

*Definition:* A flag indicating a True or False value.

*Type:* Indicator

*Meaning When True:* True

*Meaning When False:* False

**6.2.6.3 YesNoIndicator**

*Definition:* Indicates a "Yes" or "No" type of answer for an element.

*Type:* Indicator

*Meaning When True:* Yes

*Meaning When False:* No

## 6.2.7        Quantity

### 6.2.7.1 DecimalNumber

*Definition:* Number of objects represented as a decimal number, for example 0.75 or 45.6.

*Type:* Quantity

#### Format

totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	17

### 6.2.7.2 NonNegativeDecimalNumber

*Definition:* Number of objects represented as a non negative decimal number, for example, 0.75 or 45.6.

*Type:* Quantity

#### Format

minInclusive	0
totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	17

### 6.2.7.3 Number

*Definition:* Number of objects represented as an integer.

*Type:* Quantity

#### Format

totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	0

## 6.2.8        Rate

### 6.2.8.1 BaseOneRate

*Definition:* Rate expressed as a decimal, for example, 0.7 is 7/10 and 70%.

*Type:* Rate

#### Format

totalDigits	11
fractionDigits	10
baseValue	1.0

## 6.2.8.2 PercentageRate

*Definition:* Rate expressed as a percentage, that is, in hundredths, for example, 0.7 is 7/10 of a percent, and 7.0 is 7%.

*Type:* Rate

### Format

totalDigits	11
fractionDigits	10
baseValue	100.0

## 6.2.9 Text

### 6.2.9.1 Exact1NumericText

*Definition:* Specifies a numeric string with an exact length of 1 digit.

*Type:* Text

### Format

pattern	[0-9]
---------	-------

### 6.2.9.2 Exact3NumericText

*Definition:* Specifies a numeric string with an exact length of 3 digits.

*Type:* Text

### Format

pattern	[0-9]{3}
---------	----------

### 6.2.9.3 Exact4AlphaNumericText

*Definition:* Specifies an alphanumeric string with a length of 4 characters.

*Type:* Text

### Format

pattern	[a-zA-Z0-9]{4}
---------	----------------

### 6.2.9.4 Max1025Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 1025 characters.

*Type:* Text

### Format

minLength	1
maxLength	1025

### 6.2.9.5 Max105Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 105 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	105

### 6.2.9.6 Max128Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 128 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	128

### 6.2.9.7 Max140Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 140 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	140

### 6.2.9.8 Max15NumericText

*Definition:* Specifies a numeric string with a maximum length of 15 digits.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

pattern	[0-9]{1,15}
---------	-------------

### 6.2.9.9 Max15PlusSignedNumericText

*Definition:* Specifies a numeric string with a maximum length of 15 digits and may be prefixed with a plus sign.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

pattern	[+]{0,1}[0-9]{1,15}
---------	---------------------

### 6.2.9.10 Max16Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 16 characters.

Type: Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	16

#### **6.2.9.11 Max2048Text**

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 2048 characters.

Type: Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	2048

#### **6.2.9.12 Max34Text**

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 34 characters.

Type: Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	34

#### **6.2.9.13 Max350Text**

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 350 characters.

Type: Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	350

#### **6.2.9.14 Max35Text**

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 35 characters.

Type: Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	35

#### **6.2.9.15 Max3NumericText**

*Definition:* Specifies a numeric string with a maximum length of 3 digits.

Type: Text

**Format**

pattern	[0-9]{1,3}
---------	------------

#### **6.2.9.16 Max4Text**

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

Type: Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

#### **6.2.9.17 Max500Text**

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 500 characters.

Type: Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	500

#### **6.2.9.18 Max5NumericText**

*Definition:* Specifies a numeric string with a maximum length of 5 digits.

Type: Text

**Format**

pattern	[0-9]{1,5}
---------	------------

#### **6.2.9.19 Max70Text**

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 70 characters.

Type: Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	70

#### **6.2.9.20 Min2Max3NumericText**

*Definition:* Specifies a numeric string with a minimum length of 2 digits, and a maximum length of 3 digits.

Type: Text

**Format**

pattern [0-9]{2,3}

**6.2.9.21 Min3Max4NumericText**

*Definition:* Specifies a numeric string with a minimum length of 3 digits, and a maximum length of 4 digits.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

pattern [0-9]{3,4}

**6.2.9.22 Min8Max28NumericText**

*Definition:* Specifies a numeric string with a minimum length of 8 digits, and a maximum length of 28 digits.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

pattern [0-9]{8,28}

**6.2.9.23 PhoneNumber**

*Definition:* The collection of information which identifies a specific phone or FAX number as defined by telecom services.

It consists of a "+" followed by the country code (from 1 to 3 characters) then a "-" and finally, any combination of numbers, "(", ")", "+" and "-" (up to 30 characters).

*Type:* Text

**Format**

pattern \+[0-9]{1,3}-[0-9()]+\-[1,30]

**6.2.10 Time****6.2.10.1 ISOTime**

*Definition:* A particular point in the progression of time in a calendar day expressed in either UTC time format (hh:mm:ss.sssZ), local time with UTC offset format (hh:mm:ss.sss+-hh:mm), or local time format (hh:mm:ss.sss). These representations are defined in "XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition - W3C Recommendation 28 October 2004" which is aligned with ISO 8601.

Note on the time format:

1) beginning / end of calendar day

00:00:00 = the beginning of a calendar day

24:00:00 = the end of a calendar day

2) fractions of second in time format

Decimal fractions of seconds may be included. In this case, the involved parties shall agree on the maximum number of digits that are allowed.

Type: Time

## 6.2.11 YearMonth

### 6.2.11.1 ISOYearMonth

*Definition:* Month within a particular calendar year represented by YYYY-MM (ISO 8601).

Type: YearMonth